



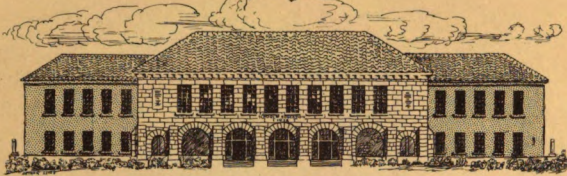
www.xueol.com.cn

Graded lessons in English

Alonzo Reed, Brainerd Kellogg



www.libtool.com.cn



SCHOOL OF EDUCATION
LIBRARY

TEXTBOOK COLLECTION

GIFT OF

SANTA CLARA COUNTY

TEACHERS LIBRARY



STANFORD UNIVERSITY
LIBRARIES

SANTA CLARA COUNTY
TEACHERS' LIBRARY
No.

www.libtool.com.cn

DEPARTMENT OF
EDUCATION
RECEIVED
JUL 28 1911
LELAND STANFORD
JUNIOR UNIVERSITY

www.libtool.com.cn

www.libtool.com.cn

www.libtool.com.cn

HINTS AND HELPS

ON
www.libtool.com.cn

ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

A DISCUSSION OF

DIFFICULTIES FOUND IN HARD SENTENCES.

FOR THE USE OF PRIVATE STUDENTS AND TEACHERS
OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

Albert N. Raub

PHILADELPHIA :
R A U B & C O .
1897.

593629

www.libtool.com.cn

C

PREFACE.

THE object of this book is to give help to the private student of English Grammar, and to such teachers as have not always the time or the opportunity to examine authorities on grammatical construction.

The sentences here discussed are taken from the grammars of *Raub*, *Harvey*, *Reed & Kellogg*, and *Swinton*, in the order named ; and in general the same technical terms are used as are given by the respective authors mentioned.

By permission of Dr. A. N. Raub, *Grammatical Analysis by Diagrams* is incorporated as a part of this book. It is introduced here (pages 3 to 41 inclusive) as being the simplest system of written analysis published, as well as the most teachable and most readily comprehended.

It is hoped that this little work may be of substantial aid to those who need help on this subject.

THE AUTHOR.

COPYRIGHT,
RAUB & CO.,
1889.

GRAMMATICAL ANALYSIS.

THE Elements of Sentences are the *Principal*, the *Modifying*, the *Connecting*, and the *Independent* parts.

The **Principal** elements are those which are necessary to the construction of a sentence. They are the *Subject* and the *Predicate*.

The **Modifying** elements are those used to limit or modify other elements. They are either *Adjective*, *Adverbial*, or *Objective*.

The **Connectives** are those which unite words, phrases, or clauses.

The **Independent** parts are those which have no grammatical relation to the rest of the sentence.

THE SUBJECT.

The **Subject** of a sentence may be either *Simple*, *Complex*, or *Compound*.

The **Simple Subject** is a noun or a pronoun, or some word, phrase, or clause used as a noun.

The *Simple Subject* is also called the *Grammatical Subject*.

THE PREDICATE.

The **Predicate** of a sentence may be either *Simple*, *Complex*, or *Compound*.

The **Simple Predicate** is always a finite verb.

The simple predicate may take the following forms :

- (a) A simple verb ; as, He *teaches*.
- (b) A copula and its attribute ; as, He *is a teacher*.
- (c) A complex verb ; as, He *laughed at* them.
- (d) A factitive construction ; as, He *built the wall high*.

The *Attribute* is an adjective, a noun, or some equivalent expression.

The *Copula* is either the verb *to be* or some other neuter verb, or a transitive verb in the passive voice.

The *Simple Predicate* is also called the *Grammatical Predicate*.

The *Attribute* may be any word, phrase, or clause.

WRITTEN ANALYSIS.

The following seems to be the simplest device for indicating subject and predicate, because most readily made. It consists simply of a perpendicular line crossed by a short horizontal line to separate subject from predicate. Thus,

<i>Birds</i> ———— ———— <i>sing.</i>	<i>Washington</i> ———— ———— <i>was elected.</i>	<i>You</i> ———— ———— <i>might have sung.</i>
---	---	--

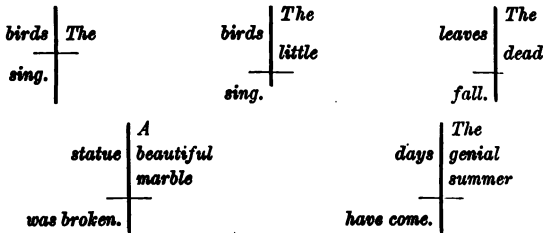
It will be seen that, whatever the simple subject, it stands to the left of the upper part of the perpendicular line, and, whatever the simple predicate, it stands to the left of the lower part of the perpendicular. By this arrangement we are enabled to place all modifiers to the right of the words which they modify, and also to write naturally from left to right and in horizontal lines.

PRINCIPLES OF ANALYSIS.

In the Analysis of Sentences the following important principles should be kept in mind :

1. That *Adjective* elements are used to limit *nouns* and *pronouns* ;
2. That *Adverbial* elements are used to limit *adjectives*, *verbs*, *participles*, and *adverbs* ;
3. That *Objective* elements are used to limit *transitive verbs in the active voice*, when the limiting element represents the object upon which the action terminates ;
4. That *Articles*, *Prepositions*, *Conjunctions*, and *Interjections* are not limited or modified.

Following the suggestion made heretofore, to place modifiers, whether words, phrases, or clauses, to the *right* of the words which they modify, the following examples of modified subjects will be readily understood without explanation :



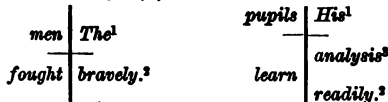
The following examples of modified predicates will be equally clear :





NOTE.—A word omitted or understood may be indicated by the following sign: x.

Should it be deemed necessary to distinguish the kind of modifiers, the simple figures 1, 2, 3 seem to answer every purpose. Thus, *adjective* modifiers may be indicated as below by (1), *adverbial* modifiers by (2), and *objective* modifiers by (3).

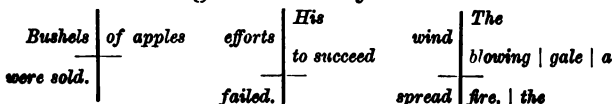


When the modifying words are themselves modified, the simplest plan of diagramming is to place the modifier to the right of the modified word and draw a short perpendicular line between them. This diagram is both readily and rapidly made. See the application in the following sentences:



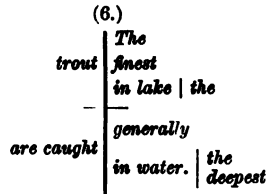
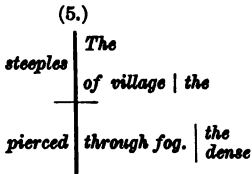
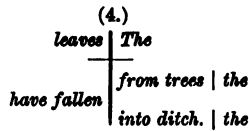
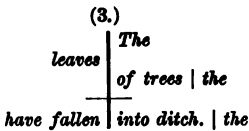
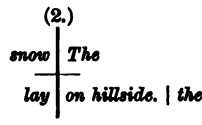
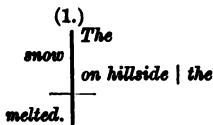
In the diagramming of phrases, whether infinitive, prepositional, or participial, the same principles should be followed as in the diagramming of single words.

See the following modified subjects:



The following modified subjects and predicates will be equally clear :

1. The snow *on the hillside* melted.
2. The snow lay *on the hillside*.
3. The leaves of the trees have fallen *into the ditch*.
4. The leaves have fallen *from the trees into the ditch*.
5. The steeples of the village pierced *through the dense* fog.
6. The finest trout in the lake are generally caught *in the deepest* water.

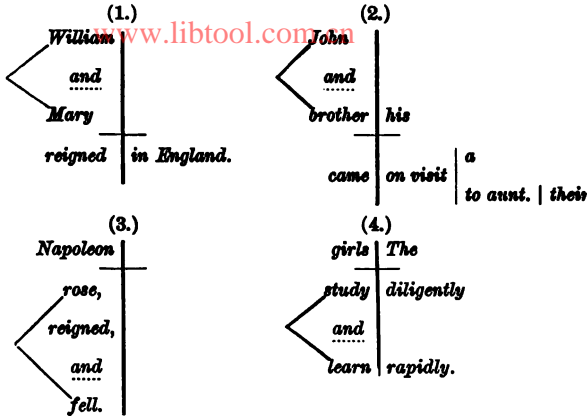


In sentences having compound subjects or compound predicates the words are usually connected by a conjunction. A simple plan of indicating the compound element is that of connecting them by oblique lines, as indicated on next page.

Conjunctions and other words used simply as connectives or independently may be indicated by placing a dotted line beneath, as in the following sentences :

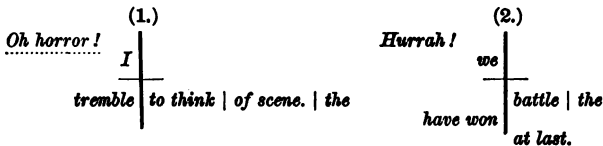
1. William and Mary reigned in England.
2. John and his brother came on a visit to their aunt.

3. Napoleon rose, reigned, and fell.
 4. The girls study diligently and learn rapidly.



Independent elements may be placed above and slightly to the left of the words they precede, as in the following sentences :

1. Oh horror! I tremble to think of the scene.
2. Hurrah! we have won the battle at last.

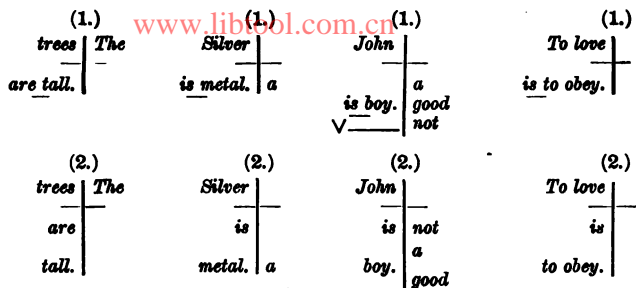


ATTRIBUTES.

The predicate in some sentences consists of a copulative verb in connection with another word or a phrase, usually an adjective or a noun, which is known as the *attribute*, as in the sentences, "The trees are *tall*," "Silver is a *metal*," "John is not a good *boy*," "To love is *to obey*."

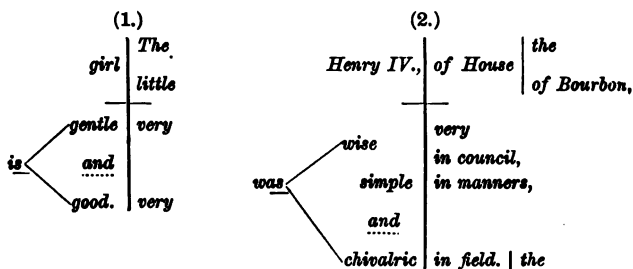
In diagramming a sentence containing an attribute the copula and the attribute may be written together as the

predicate. Either of the following two forms will be found convenient :



When there are several attributes, they may be written in the same manner as other connected elements. See the following :

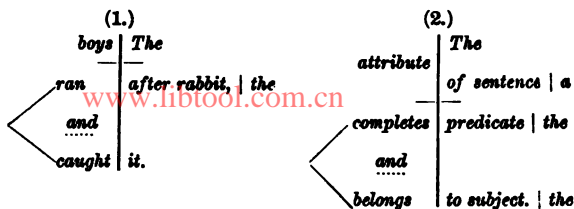
1. The little girl is very gentle and very good.
2. Henry IV., of the House of Bourbon, was very wise in council, simple in manners, and chivalric in the field.



When the predicate is compound, each verb may be modified singly, or both may be modified by the same word.

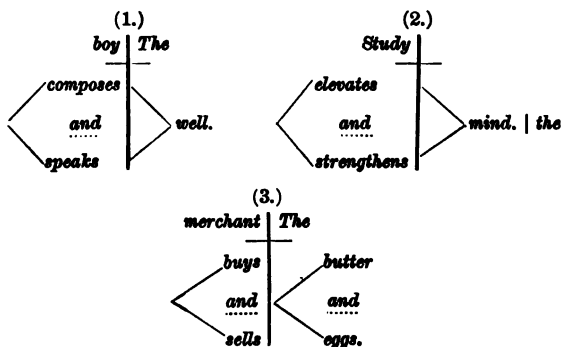
The following sentences illustrate the former case :

1. The boys ran after the rabbit, and caught it.
2. The attribute of a sentence completes the predicate and belongs to the subject.



The following are illustrations of sentences in which both predicate verbs are modified by the same word :

1. The boy composes and speaks well.
2. Study elevates and strengthens the mind.
3. The merchant buys and sells butter and eggs.



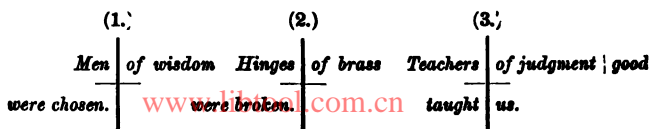
MODIFIERS OF NOUNS.

The modifiers of nouns or pronouns are always adjective elements.

As has been shown, *nouns* may be modified—

1. *By adjectives.*
2. *By phrases,* as in the following :

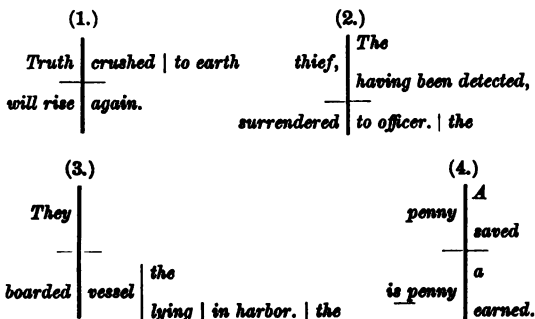
1. Men of wisdom were chosen.
2. Hinges of brass were broken.
3. Teachers of good judgment taught us.



3. A noun may be modified by a participle.

The diagram is as follows :

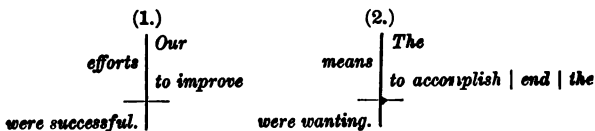
1. Truth crushed to earth will rise again.
2. The thief, having been detected, surrendered to officer.
3. They boarded the vessel lying in the harbor.
4. A penny saved is a penny earned.



4. A noun may be modified by a verb in the infinitive mode.

The diagram is as follows :

1. Our efforts to improve were successful.
2. The means to accomplish the end were wanting.
3. All his attempts to reach the top failed.
4. The hour to be given to exercise has come.



<p>(3.)</p> <table style="border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="padding-right: 5px;">attempts</td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;">All</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;">his</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;">to reach</td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;"> top the</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;">failed.</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	attempts	All			his			to reach	top the	failed.			<p>(4.)</p> <table style="border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="padding-right: 5px;">hour</td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;">The</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;">to be given</td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;"> to exercise</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;">has come.</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	hour	The			to be given	to exercise	has come.		
attempts	All																					
	his																					
	to reach	top the																				
failed.																						
hour	The																					
	to be given	to exercise																				
has come.																						

5. A noun may be modified by a noun or a pronoun in the possessive case. See the following :

1. The farmer's crops were gathered.
2. My brother's friend came to the city to-day.
3. Our friend's house was burned yesterday.

<p>(1.)</p> <table style="border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="padding-right: 5px;">crops</td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;">farmer's</td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;"> The</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;">were gathered.</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	crops	farmer's	The	were gathered.			<p>(2.)</p> <table style="border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="padding-right: 5px;">friend</td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;">brother's</td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;"> My</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;">to city</td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;"> the</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;">came</td> <td></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;">to-day.</td> </tr> </table>	friend	brother's	My		to city	the	came		to-day.
crops	farmer's	The														
were gathered.																
friend	brother's	My														
	to city	the														
came		to-day.														

(3.)

house	friend's	Our
was burned		yesterday.

6. A noun may be modified by a noun in apposition. See the following :

1. The ship Ironsides came into port.
2. I stayed with my brother the lawyer.
3. Company, villainous company, hath been the spoil of me.

<p>(1.)</p> <table style="border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="padding-right: 5px;">ship</td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;">The</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;">Ironsides</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;">came</td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;">into port.</td> </tr> </table>	ship	The		Ironsides	came	into port.	<p>(2.)</p> <table style="border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="padding-right: 5px;">I</td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;">with brother</td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;"> my</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;">stayed</td> <td></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;">lawyer. the</td> </tr> </table>	I	with brother	my	stayed		lawyer. the
ship	The												
	Ironsides												
came	into port.												
I	with brother	my											
stayed		lawyer. the											

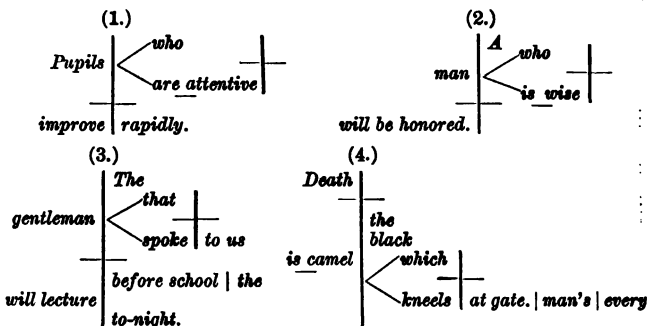
(3.)

Company,	company,	villainous
hath been	spoil	the
		of me.

7. A *noun* may be modified by a *clause*, thus forming a *complex sentence*.

The simplest form of diagramming is as follows :

1. Pupils who are attentive improve rapidly.
2. A man who is wise will be honored.
3. The gentleman that spoke to us will lecture before the school to-night.
4. Death is the black camel which kneels at every man's gate.



A *pronoun* may be modified in all respects as a *noun*, except that it is not limited by a *noun* or a *pronoun* in the *possessive case*.

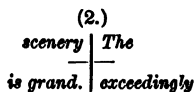
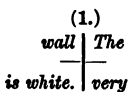
MODIFIERS OF ADJECTIVES.

The *modifiers of adjectives* are *adverbial elements*.

1. An *adjective* may be modified by an *adverb*.

See the following :

1. The wall is very white.
2. The scenery is exceedingly grand.
3. The valley of the Mississippi is very fertile.
4. A very beautiful bird sat on the bough.

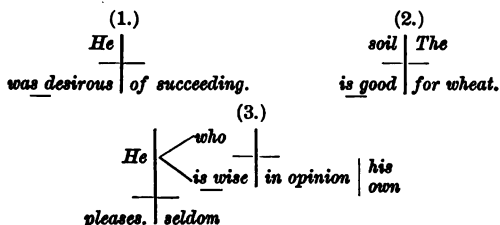




2. *An adjective may be modified by a phrase.*

See the following :

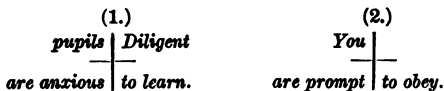
1. He was desirous of succeeding.
2. The soil is good for wheat.
3. He who is wise in his own opinion seldom pleases.



3. *An adjective may be modified by an infinitive.*

See the following :

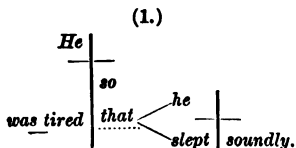
1. Diligent pupils are anxious to learn.
2. You are prompt to obey.

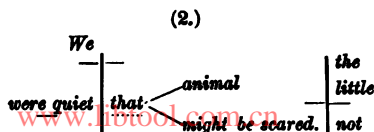


4. *An adjective may be modified by a clause, thus forming a complex sentence.*

See the following sentences :

1. He was so tired that he slept soundly.
2. We were quiet that the little animal might not be scared.





MODIFIERS OF VERBS.

The modifiers of verbs are either adverbial or objective elements.

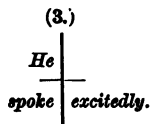
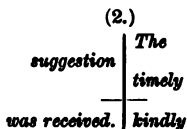
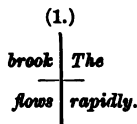
Only a *transitive* verb in the active voice can have a direct object; this is called an *Objective Element*.

All other modifiers of verbs are *adverbial* elements.

1. *A verb may be modified by an adverb.*

See the following sentences :

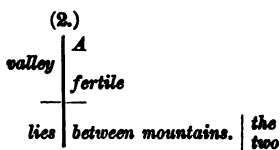
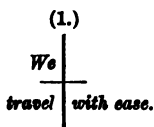
1. The brook flows rapidly.
2. The timely suggestion was kindly received.
3. He spoke excitedly.



2. *A verb may be modified by a phrase.*

See the following :

1. We travel with ease.
2. A fertile valley lies between the two mountains.
3. England was conquered by the Normans in the eleventh century.



(3.)

<i>England</i>	—	
<i>was conquered</i>	—	<i>by Normans the</i>
<i>in century.</i>	—	<i>the</i>
		<i>eleventh</i>

3. A verb may be modified by an infinitive.

See the following :

1. We came to recite.
2. We are commanded to love our enemies.
3. They will try to do their duty.
4. We will strive to honor you.

<p>(1.)</p> <table style="border-collapse: collapse; margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td style="text-align: right; padding-right: 10px;"><i>We</i></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;">—</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: right; padding-right: 10px;"><i>came</i></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;">—</td> <td style="padding-left: 10px;"><i>to recite.</i></td> </tr> </table>	<i>We</i>	—		<i>came</i>	—	<i>to recite.</i>	<p>(2.)</p> <table style="border-collapse: collapse; margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td style="text-align: right; padding-right: 10px;"><i>We</i></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;">—</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: right; padding-right: 10px;"><i>are commanded</i></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;">—</td> <td style="padding-left: 10px;"><i>to love enemies. our</i></td> </tr> </table>	<i>We</i>	—		<i>are commanded</i>	—	<i>to love enemies. our</i>
<i>We</i>	—												
<i>came</i>	—	<i>to recite.</i>											
<i>We</i>	—												
<i>are commanded</i>	—	<i>to love enemies. our</i>											
<p>(3.)</p> <table style="border-collapse: collapse; margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td style="text-align: right; padding-right: 10px;"><i>They</i></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;">—</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: right; padding-right: 10px;"><i>will try</i></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;">—</td> <td style="padding-left: 10px;"><i>to do duty. their</i></td> </tr> </table>	<i>They</i>	—		<i>will try</i>	—	<i>to do duty. their</i>	<p>(4.)</p> <table style="border-collapse: collapse; margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td style="text-align: right; padding-right: 10px;"><i>We</i></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;">—</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: right; padding-right: 10px;"><i>will strive</i></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;">—</td> <td style="padding-left: 10px;"><i>to honor you.</i></td> </tr> </table>	<i>We</i>	—		<i>will strive</i>	—	<i>to honor you.</i>
<i>They</i>	—												
<i>will try</i>	—	<i>to do duty. their</i>											
<i>We</i>	—												
<i>will strive</i>	—	<i>to honor you.</i>											

4. A verb may be modified by an objective.

See the following :

1. Heaven from all creatures hides the book of fate.
2. We greet the opening flowers of spring joyfully.
3. He displays good taste in the arrangement of his work

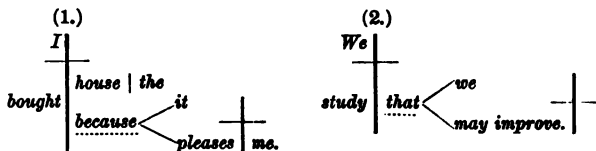
<p>(1.)</p> <table style="border-collapse: collapse; margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td style="text-align: right; padding-right: 10px;"><i>Heaven</i></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;">—</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: right; padding-right: 10px;"><i>hides</i></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;">—</td> <td style="padding-left: 10px;"><i>book the</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td style="padding-left: 10px;"><i>of fate.</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td style="padding-left: 10px;"><i>from creatures all</i></td> </tr> </table>	<i>Heaven</i>	—		<i>hides</i>	—	<i>book the</i>			<i>of fate.</i>			<i>from creatures all</i>	<p>(2.)</p> <table style="border-collapse: collapse; margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td style="text-align: right; padding-right: 10px;"><i>We</i></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;">—</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: right; padding-right: 10px;"><i>greet</i></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;">—</td> <td style="padding-left: 10px;"><i>flowers the</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td style="padding-left: 10px;"><i>opening</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td style="padding-left: 10px;"><i>of spring</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td style="padding-left: 10px;"><i>joyfully.</i></td> </tr> </table>	<i>We</i>	—		<i>greet</i>	—	<i>flowers the</i>			<i>opening</i>			<i>of spring</i>			<i>joyfully.</i>
<i>Heaven</i>	—																											
<i>hides</i>	—	<i>book the</i>																										
		<i>of fate.</i>																										
		<i>from creatures all</i>																										
<i>We</i>	—																											
<i>greet</i>	—	<i>flowers the</i>																										
		<i>opening</i>																										
		<i>of spring</i>																										
		<i>joyfully.</i>																										
<p>(3.)</p> <table style="border-collapse: collapse; margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td style="text-align: right; padding-right: 10px;"><i>He</i></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;">—</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: right; padding-right: 10px;"><i>displays</i></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 5px;">—</td> <td style="padding-left: 10px;"><i>taste good</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td style="padding-left: 10px;"><i>in arrangement the</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td style="padding-left: 10px;"><i>of work. his</i></td> </tr> </table>		<i>He</i>	—		<i>displays</i>	—	<i>taste good</i>			<i>in arrangement the</i>			<i>of work. his</i>															
<i>He</i>	—																											
<i>displays</i>	—	<i>taste good</i>																										
		<i>in arrangement the</i>																										
		<i>of work. his</i>																										

5. A *verb* may be modified by a *clause*.

See the following :

1. I bought the house because it pleases me.

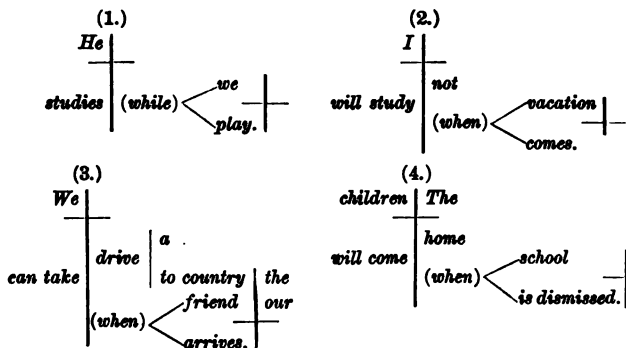
2. We study that we may improve.



NOTE.—In both of the foregoing sentences the clause modifier is connected with the verb by a conjunction.

In the following sentences it is connected by a conjunctive adverb, which modifies the verb in each clause, and is placed in parenthesis to show that its office differs from that of the simple conjunction, as also from the simple connective adverb.

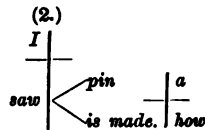
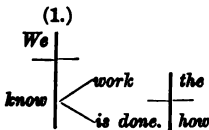
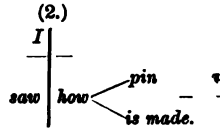
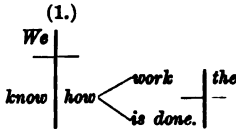
1. He studies while we play.
2. I will not study when vacation comes.
3. We can take a drive to the country when our friend arrives.
4. The children will come home when school is dismissed.



NOTE.—In some sentences the adverb introducing the subordinate clause is not a conjunctive adverb, limiting, as it does, only the verb in the modifying clause.

1. We know how the work is done.
2. I saw how a pin is made.

In the following diagrams the first set shows the use of the adverb as a *connective*. The omission of the dotted line shows that it is also a modifier. The second set of diagrams shows the adverb used as a *modifier*, and also that the whole clause which it introduces modifies the verb in the principal clause.



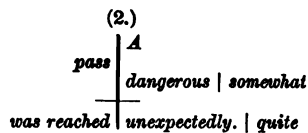
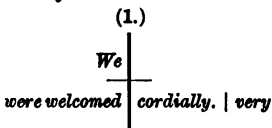
MODIFIERS OF ADVERBS.

All modifiers of adverbs are adverbial elements.

1. *An adverb may be modified by an adverb.*

See the following :

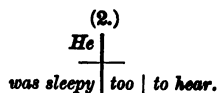
1. We were welcomed very cordially.
2. A somewhat dangerous pass was reached quite unexpectedly.



2. *An adverb may be modified by a phrase.*

See the following :

1. She is old enough to go to school.
2. He was too sleepy to hear.



3. *An adverbial phrase, or a group of words used as an adverb, may be modified in the same manner as a single word.*

www.libtool.com.cn

In sentence (1.) given below, *just* modifies the phrase "below town;" in sentence (2.), *only* modifies the phrase "in atmosphere;" in sentence (3.), *directly* modifies the phrase "over house;" in sentence (4.), *nearly* modifies the phrase "across lake."

It is held by some writers on grammar, but incorrectly, that in such cases the adverb modifies a preposition.

1. He lives just below town.

2. Genius can breathe freely only in the atmosphere of freedom.

3. The bird flew directly over the house.

4. We rowed the boat nearly across the lake.

(1.)

<i>He</i>		
<i>lives</i>		<i>below town.</i>
		∨ _____
		<i>just</i>

(2.)

<i>Genius</i>		
<i>can breathe</i>		<i>freely</i>
		<i>in atmosphere</i>
		∨ _____
		<i>only</i>
		<i>the</i>
		<i>of freedom.</i>

(3.)

<i>bird</i>		
<i>The</i>		
<i>flew</i>		<i>over house.</i>
		∨ _____
		<i>directly</i>
		<i>the</i>

(4.)

<i>We</i>		
<i>rowed</i>		<i>boat the</i>
		<i>across lake.</i>
		∨ _____
		<i>nearly</i>
		<i>the</i>

NOTE.—The inverted caret shows that the phrase is modified as a whole; the line connects the caret with the modifying word.

FACTITIVES.

The predicate verb of a sentence, when having the signification of *make*, is sometimes followed by another word, usually a noun or an adjective, which completes the meaning of the verb, but refers to the object, as in

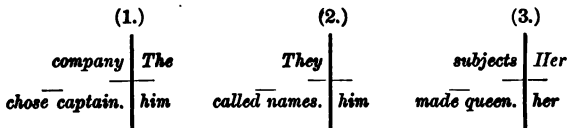
the sentence, *Wash your hands clean*; that is, *cleavse* your hands. Also in the sentence, His subjects *elected* him *king*; that is, *kinged* or *crowned* him. This word following the verb is called a *factitive*. In all such cases the verb and the factitive together form the simple *predicate*, and are together equivalent to a single word.

The word *factitive* is derived from *facio*, "I make." By some authors the factitive is called the *objective complement*.

The manner of diagramming factitives is indicated below.

1. The following sentences contain factitive *nouns* :

1. The company chose him captain.
2. They called him names.
3. Her subjects made her queen.

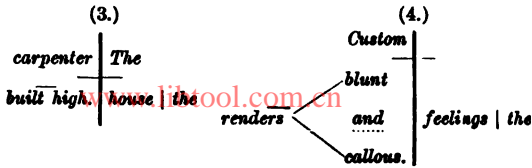


NOTE.—A short horizontal line is placed above the combined predicate to distinguish the factitive from the attribute, which has the line below.

2. The following sentences contain factitive *adjectives* :

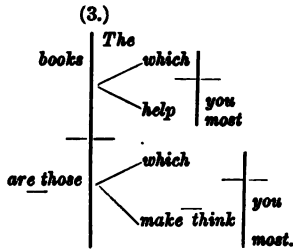
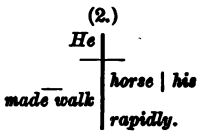
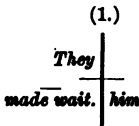
1. The painter painted the wall white.
2. Open the door wide.
3. The carpenter built the house high.
4. Custom renders the feelings blunt and callous.





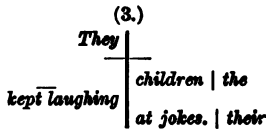
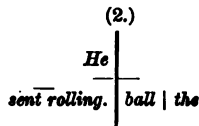
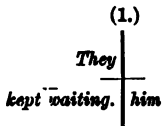
3. The following sentences contain factitive *infinitives* :

1. They made him wait.
2. He made his horse walk rapidly.
3. The books which help you most are those which make you think most.



4. The following sentences contain factitive *participles* :

1. They kept him waiting.
2. He sent the ball rolling.
3. They kept the children laughing at their jokes.



INFINITIVES.

A verb in the infinitive mode depends upon the word which it limits or completes in meaning.

1. A verb in the infinitive mode may be used as the *subject of a sentence*, but when so used it is modified in all respects as a verb.

See the following examples :

1. To obey our superiors promptly is prudent.
2. To spend too much time in studies is sloth.
3. To make judgment wholly by their rules is the humor of a scholar.

(1.)

<i>To obey</i>	<i>superiors our</i>
	<i>promptly</i>
<i>is prudent.</i>	

(2.)

<i>To spend</i>	<i>time much too</i>
	<i>in studies</i>
<i>is sloth.</i>	

(3.)

<i>To make</i>	<i>judgment</i>
	<i>by rules their</i>
	<i>wholly</i>
<i>is humor</i>	<i>the</i>
	<i>of scholar. a</i>

2. A verb in the infinitive mode may be used as the *object*.

See the following :

1. He refused to obey.
2. We should learn to govern ourselves.

(1.)

<i>He</i>	
<i>refused</i>	<i>to obey.</i>

(2.)

<i>We</i>	
<i>should learn</i>	<i>to govern ourselves.</i>

3. *A verb in the infinitive mode may be used as the attribute.*

See the following :

1. The noblest vengeance is to forgive.
2. To bear our fate is to conquer it.
3. To be good is to be great.

(1.)	(2.)	(3.)
vengeance <i>The</i> <i>noblest</i> <hr style="width: 50%; margin: 0 auto;"/> is to forgive.	To bear fate our <hr style="width: 50%; margin: 0 auto;"/> is to conquer it.	To be good <hr style="width: 50%; margin: 0 auto;"/> is to be great.

NOTE.—The adjectives *good* and *great* in example (3) are used abstractly.

4. *A verb in the infinitive mode may be used as an adjective modifier.*

See the following :

1. Orders to vacate were given yesterday.
2. The hot-house is a trap to catch sunbeams.
3. Money to assist the poor was left with me.
4. All attempts to conquer him were fruitless.

(1.)	(2.)
Orders to vacate <hr style="width: 50%; margin: 0 auto;"/> were given yesterday.	hot-house <i>The</i> <hr style="width: 50%; margin: 0 auto;"/> is trap a to catch sunbeams.
(3.)	(4.)
Money to assist poor the <hr style="width: 50%; margin: 0 auto;"/> was left with me.	attempts <i>All</i> <hr style="width: 50%; margin: 0 auto;"/> to conquer him were fruitless.

5. *A verb in the infinitive mode may be used as an adverbial modifier.*

See the following :

1. We will sing to please you.
2. The child was afraid to go alone.

3. The boys stopped to play by the way.

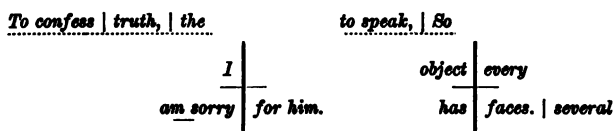
4. We came to recite our lesson.



NOTE.—For the use of the infinitive as a factitive see page 21.

6. A verb in the infinitive mode is sometimes used independently, as in the sentence, *To confess the truth, I am sorry for him.*

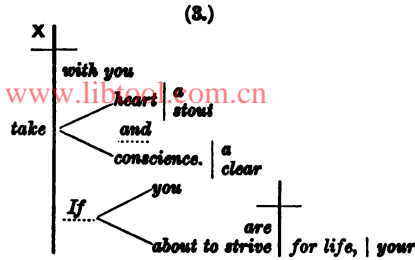
In such cases the infinitive is diagrammed as an independent element, as follows :



7. The infinitive phrase is sometimes used after a preposition, the two forming an attribute, as in the sentences :

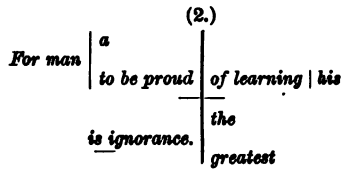
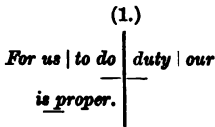
1. Our friends are about to leave us.
2. The pupils are now about to recite.
3. If you are about to strive for your life, take with you a stout heart and a clear conscience.





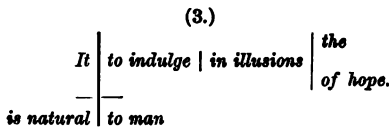
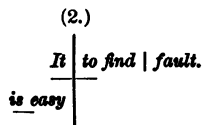
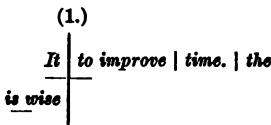
8. Sometimes the verb in the infinitive mode, preceded by a prepositional phrase, is used as the subject of a sentence, as in the sentences :

1. For us to do our duty is proper.
2. For a man to be proud of his learning is the greatest ignorance.



9. An infinitive phrase is sometimes used as explanatory of the subject, as in the sentences :

1. It is wise to improve the time.
2. It is easy to find fault.
3. It is natural to man to indulge in the illusions of hope.



PARTICIPLES.

1. *Participles, when used as nouns, may be modified either as nouns or as participles, or as both at the same time.*

See the following sentences :

1. The cackling of geese saved Rome.
2. We may gain much information by reading diligently.
3. His writing that letter so neatly secured the position for him.
4. Our going to the lecture will depend upon my father's giving his consent.

(1.)

cackling	The	
	of geese	
	saved	Rome.

(2.)

may gain	We	
	information	much
	by reading	diligently.

(3.)

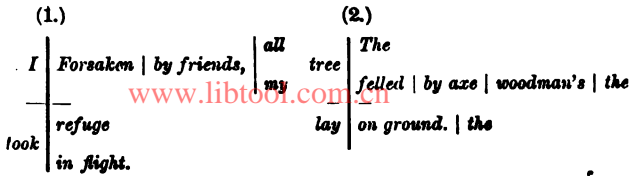
writing	His	
	letter	that
	neatly	so
secured	for	him.
	position	the

(4.)

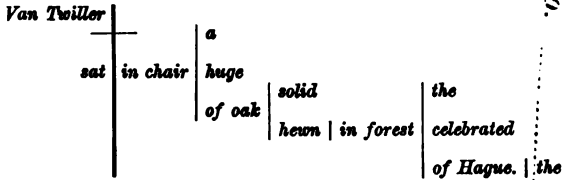
will depend	Our	
	going	to lecture the
	upon giving	father's my
		consent. his

2. *Participles, when not forming a part of the simple subject or predicate, are either objective or adjective elements. They are objective only when used as nouns. When used as pure participles, they are adjective elements, as in the following sentences :*

1. Forsaken by all my friends, I took refuge in flight.
2. The tree felled by the woodman's axe lay on the ground.
3. Van Twiller sat in a huge chair of solid oak hewn in the celebrated forest of the Hague.



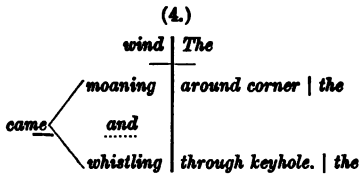
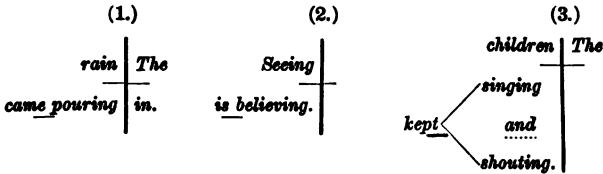
(3.)



3. *A participle may be used as the attribute.*

See the following sentences :

1. The rain came pouring in.
2. Seeing is believing.
3. The children kept singing and shouting.
4. The wind came moaning around the corner and whistling through the keyhole.



NOTE.—For the use of the participle as a factitive see page 21.

4. A *participle* may be used *independently* after a *verb in the infinitive mode*; as,

1. To keep studying always is impossible.
2. To be fretting continually mars the disposition.

(1.)	(2.)								
<table style="border-collapse: collapse; margin: auto;"> <tr> <td style="padding: 0 10px;"><i>To keep studying</i></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding: 0 10px;"><i>always</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="border-top: 1px solid black; padding: 0 10px;"><i>is impossible.</i></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; border-top: 1px solid black; padding: 0 10px;"></td> </tr> </table>	<i>To keep studying</i>	<i>always</i>	<i>is impossible.</i>		<table style="border-collapse: collapse; margin: auto;"> <tr> <td style="padding: 0 10px;"><i>To be fretting</i></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding: 0 10px;"><i>continually</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="border-top: 1px solid black; padding: 0 10px;"><i>mars</i></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; border-top: 1px solid black; padding: 0 10px;"><i>disposition. the</i></td> </tr> </table>	<i>To be fretting</i>	<i>continually</i>	<i>mars</i>	<i>disposition. the</i>
<i>To keep studying</i>	<i>always</i>								
<i>is impossible.</i>									
<i>To be fretting</i>	<i>continually</i>								
<i>mars</i>	<i>disposition. the</i>								

5. A *participle* may be followed by a *noun* or a *pronoun used independently*, as in the sentences:

1. His being an officer protected him.
2. Our being Americans gave us an advantage.

(1.)	(2.)														
<table style="border-collapse: collapse; margin: auto;"> <tr> <td style="padding: 0 10px;"><i>being</i></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding: 0 10px;"><i>His</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 0 10px;"><i>officer</i></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding: 0 10px;"><i>an</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="border-top: 1px solid black; padding: 0 10px;"><i>protected</i></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; border-top: 1px solid black; padding: 0 10px;"><i>him.</i></td> </tr> </table>	<i>being</i>	<i>His</i>	<i>officer</i>	<i>an</i>	<i>protected</i>	<i>him.</i>	<table style="border-collapse: collapse; margin: auto;"> <tr> <td style="padding: 0 10px;"><i>being</i></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding: 0 10px;"><i>Our</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 0 10px;"><i>Americans</i></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding: 0 10px;"></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="border-top: 1px solid black; padding: 0 10px;"><i>gave</i></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; border-top: 1px solid black; padding: 0 10px;"><i>X us</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 0 10px;"></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding: 0 10px;"><i>advantage. an</i></td> </tr> </table>	<i>being</i>	<i>Our</i>	<i>Americans</i>		<i>gave</i>	<i>X us</i>		<i>advantage. an</i>
<i>being</i>	<i>His</i>														
<i>officer</i>	<i>an</i>														
<i>protected</i>	<i>him.</i>														
<i>being</i>	<i>Our</i>														
<i>Americans</i>															
<i>gave</i>	<i>X us</i>														
	<i>advantage. an</i>														

6. A *participle* may be used in *independent* or *absolute phrases*, as in the sentences:

1. The class having recited, school was dismissed.
2. The bridge having been burned, the train fell into the river.

(1.)	(2.)																		
<table style="border-collapse: collapse; margin: auto;"> <tr> <td style="padding: 0 10px;"><i>class</i></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding: 0 10px;"><i>The</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="border-top: 1px solid black; padding: 0 10px;"><i>having recited,</i></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; border-top: 1px solid black; padding: 0 10px;"></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 0 10px;"></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding: 0 10px;"><i>school</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="border-top: 1px solid black; padding: 0 10px;"><i>was dismissed.</i></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; border-top: 1px solid black; padding: 0 10px;"></td> </tr> </table>	<i>class</i>	<i>The</i>	<i>having recited,</i>			<i>school</i>	<i>was dismissed.</i>		<table style="border-collapse: collapse; margin: auto;"> <tr> <td style="padding: 0 10px;"><i>bridge</i></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding: 0 10px;"><i>The</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="border-top: 1px solid black; padding: 0 10px;"><i>having been burned,</i></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; border-top: 1px solid black; padding: 0 10px;"></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 0 10px;"></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding: 0 10px;"><i>train</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="border-top: 1px solid black; padding: 0 10px;"><i>fell</i></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; border-top: 1px solid black; padding: 0 10px;"><i>the</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 0 10px;"></td> <td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding: 0 10px;"><i>into river. the</i></td> </tr> </table>	<i>bridge</i>	<i>The</i>	<i>having been burned,</i>			<i>train</i>	<i>fell</i>	<i>the</i>		<i>into river. the</i>
<i>class</i>	<i>The</i>																		
<i>having recited,</i>																			
	<i>school</i>																		
<i>was dismissed.</i>																			
<i>bridge</i>	<i>The</i>																		
<i>having been burned,</i>																			
	<i>train</i>																		
<i>fell</i>	<i>the</i>																		
	<i>into river. the</i>																		

THE COMPLEX SENTENCE.

A **Complex Sentence** is one which contains a principal proposition modified by one or more subordinate propositions. The following are examples :

The moon was still shining when we returned home.

The hotel at which we stayed *was overcrowded*.

In the sentences given above, the italicized words constitute the principal proposition in each sentence.

THE ADJECTIVE CLAUSE.

When a noun or a pronoun is modified by a clause, the *modifier* is known as an *adjective element* or *clause*.

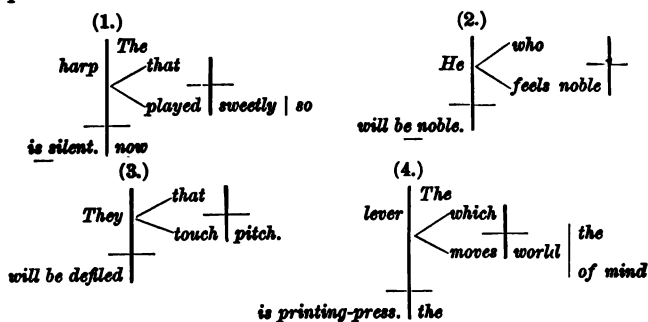
1. *An adjective clause may modify a noun or a pronoun in the subject; as,*

1. The harp that played so sweetly is now silent.

2. He who feels noble will be noble.

3. They will be defiled that touch pitch.

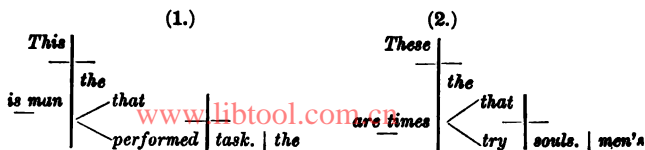
4. The lever which moves the world of mind is the printing-press.



2. *An adjective clause may modify a noun in the predicate; as,*

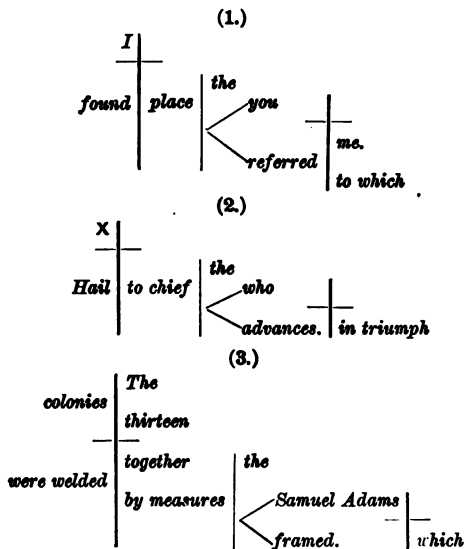
1. This is the man that performed the task.

2. These are the times that try men's souls.



3. An adjective clause may modify a noun in any of the modifying elements; as,

1. I found the place to which you referred me.
2. Hail to the chief who in triumph advances.
3. The thirteen colonies were welded together by the measures which Samuel Adams framed.



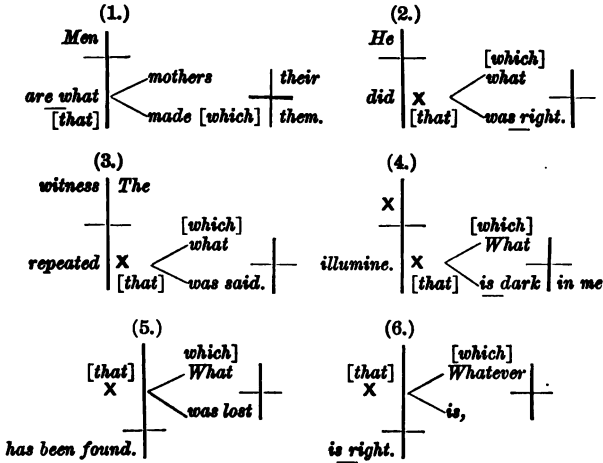
4. An adjective clause is sometimes introduced by the relative *what*, which in many cases has a double construction.

See the following sentences :

1. Men are what their mothers made them.
2. He did what was right.

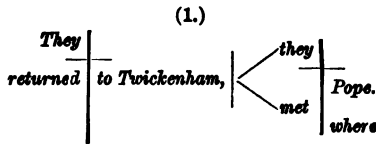
3. The witness repeated what was said.
4. What is dark in me illumine.
5. What was lost has been found.
6. Whatever is, is right.

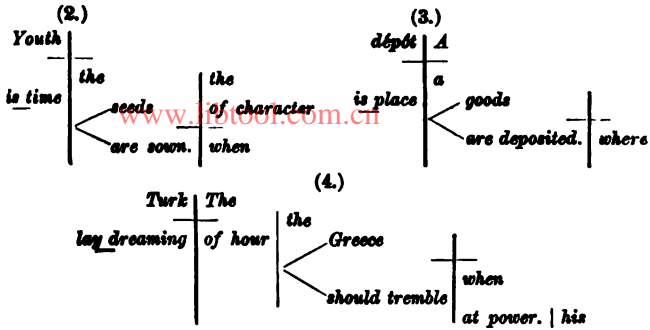
NOTE.—In the following diagrams *what* is equivalent to *that* *which*; this is indicated by placing *that* and *which* in brackets, to show that they are not properly a part of the sentence.



5. An adjective clause is sometimes introduced by a relative adverb; as,

1. They returned to Twickenham, *where* they met Pope.
2. Youth is the time *when* the seeds of character are sown.
3. A *dépôt* is a place *where* goods are deposited.
4. The Turk lay dreaming of the hour *when* Greece should tremble at his power.

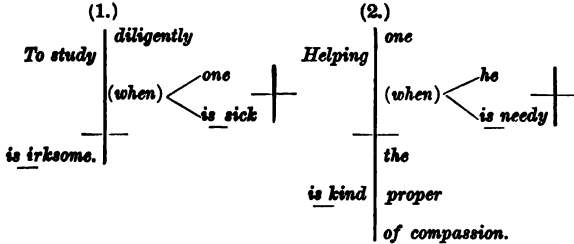




THE ADVERBIAL CLAUSE.

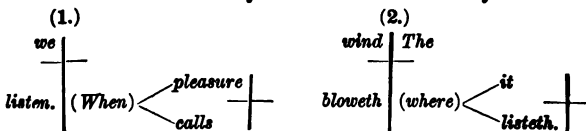
1. *An adverbial clause may modify the subject of a sentence when the subject consists of a participle or a verb in the infinitive mode.*

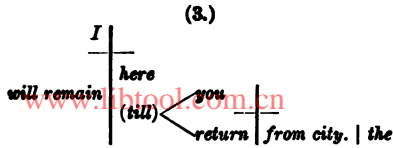
1. To study diligently when one is sick is irksome.
2. Helping one when he is needy is the proper kind of compassion.



2. *An adverbial clause may modify the predicate verb of a sentence.*

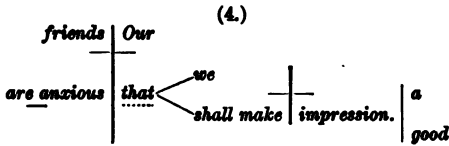
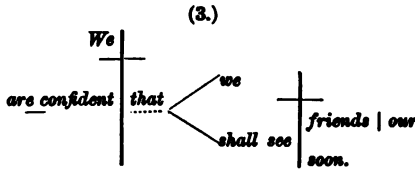
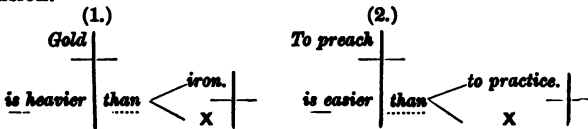
1. When pleasure calls we listen.
2. The wind bloweth where it listeth.
3. I will remain here till you return from the city.





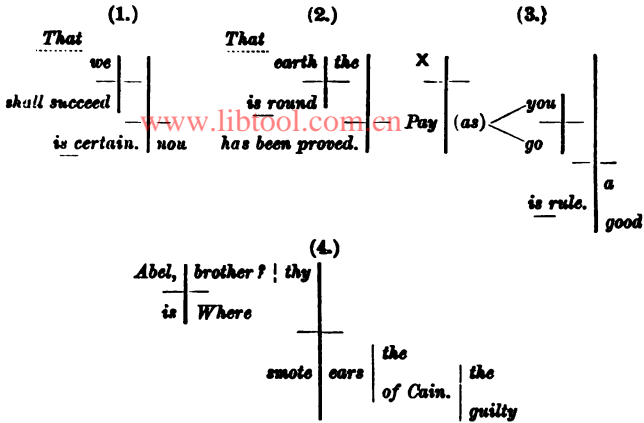
3. *An adverbial clause may modify the attribute.*

1. Gold is heavier than iron.
2. To preach is easier than to practice.
3. We are confident that we shall see our friends soon.
4. Our friends are anxious that we shall make a good impression.



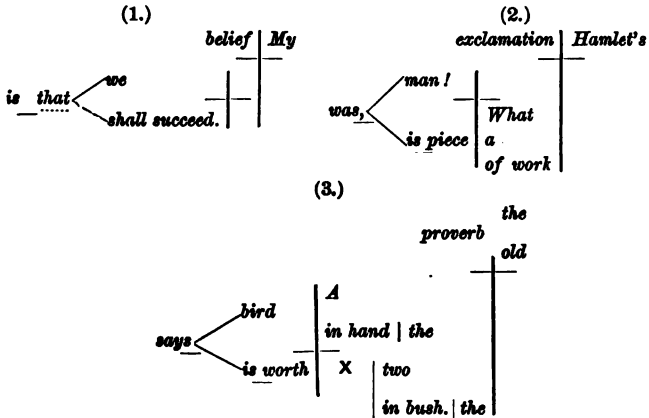
THE NOUN CLAUSE.

1. *A noun clause may be used as the subject of a sentence.*
1. That we shall succeed is now certain.
2. That the earth is round has been proved.
3. "Pay as you go" is a good rule.
4. "Where is Abel, thy brother?" smote the ears of the guilty Cain.



2. A noun clause may be used as an attribute.

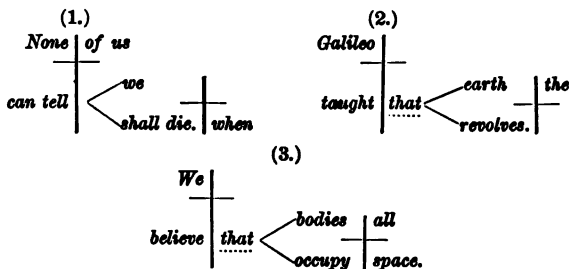
1. My belief is that we shall succeed.
2. Hamlet's exclamation was, "What a piece of work is man!"
3. "A bird in the hand," says the old proverb, "is worth two in the bush."



NOTE.—X indicates the omission of the word "birds."

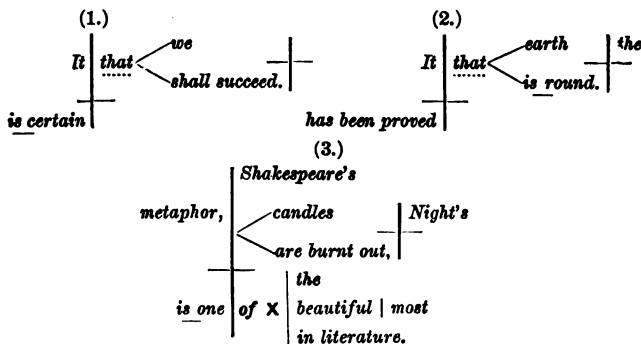
3. A noun clause may be an objective modifier.

1. None of us can tell when we shall die.
2. Galileo taught that the earth revolves.
3. We believe that all bodies occupy space.



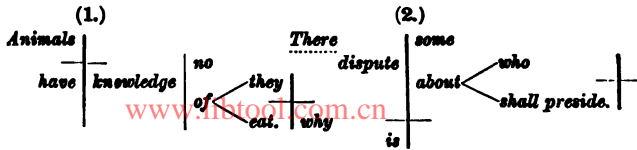
4. A noun clause may be used as an explanatory modifier or adjective element.

1. It is certain that we shall succeed.
2. It has been proved that the earth is round.
3. Shakespeare's metaphor, "Night's candles are burnt out," is one of the most beautiful in literature.



5. A noun clause may be used as the object of a preposition.

1. Animals have no knowledge of why they eat.
2. There is some dispute about who shall preside.



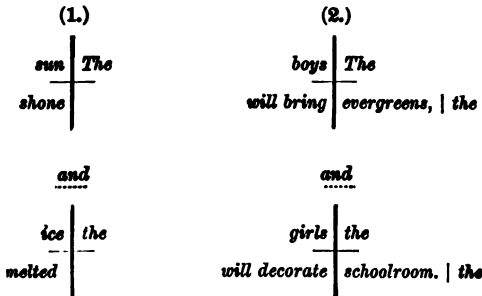
COMPOUND SENTENCES.

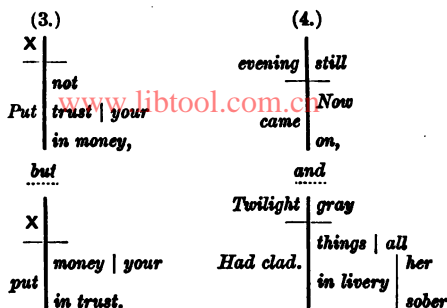
A **Compound Sentence** is one that contains two or more principal propositions.

The *principal propositions* may be either simple or complex. When *simple*, they are analyzed and diagrammed in the same manner as *simple sentences*. The *connective* is indicated by dotted lines.

See the following :

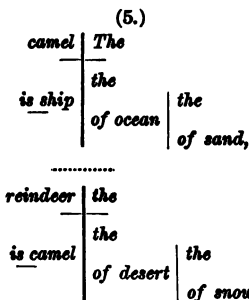
1. The sun shone and the ice melted.
2. The boys will bring the evergreens, and the girls will decorate the schoolroom.
3. Put not your trust in money, but put your money in trust
4. Now came still evening on, and Twilight gray
Had in her sober livery all things clad.





5. The camel is the ship of the ocean of sand, the reindeer is the camel of the desert of snow.

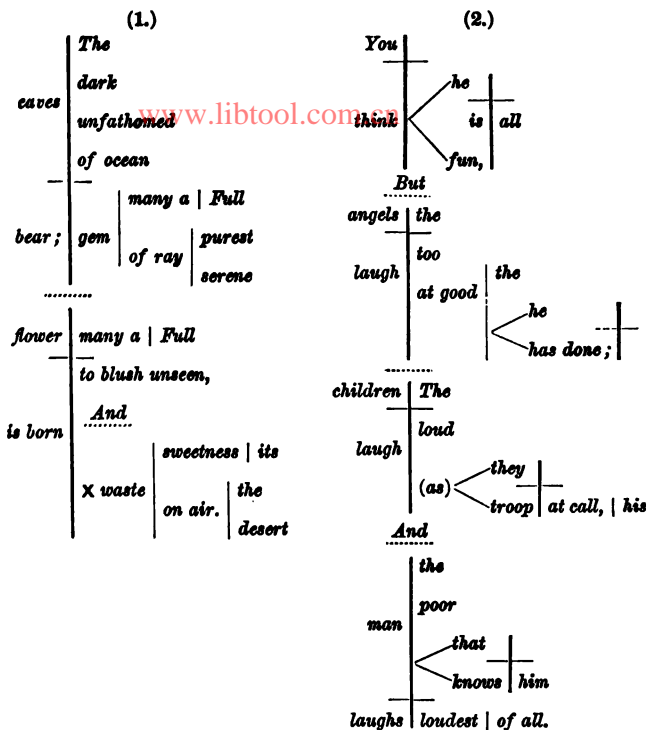
NOTE.—In this sentence the connective, being omitted, is indicated by dotted lines,



When the propositions of a compound sentence are *complex*, they are analyzed and diagrammed in the same manner as *complex sentences*.

1. Full many a gem of purest ray serene
 The dark unfathomed caves of ocean bear;
 Full many a flower is born to blush unseen,
 And waste its sweetness on the desert air.

2. You think he's all fun,
 But the angels laugh too at the good he has done;
 The children laugh loud as they troop at his call,
 And the poor man that knows him laughs loudest of all.



NOTE.—In example 2 *all* is an adverb modifying the copula 's or *is*.

INDEPENDENT ELEMENTS.

The independent parts of sentences neither modify nor connect.

The independent parts are—

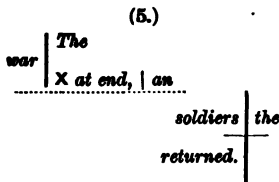
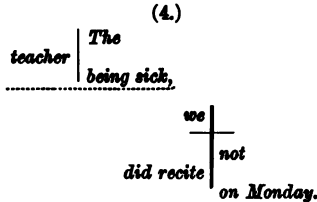
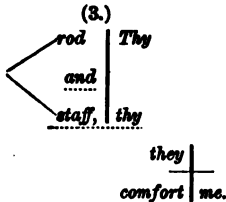
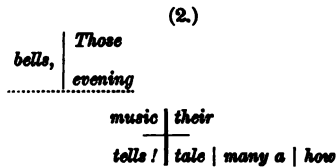
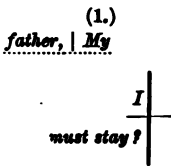
1. *Nouns and Pronouns in the Nominative Case Independent or Absolute.*
2. *Interjections.*
3. *Independent Adverbs.*

1. The following sentences illustrate the **Nominative Case Independent** :

1. (*By address.*) My father, must I stay ?
2. (*By exclamation.*) Those evening bells, how many a tale their music tells !
3. (*By pleonasm.*) Thy rod and thy staff, they comfort me.

The following are by some writers said to be in the **Nominative Case Absolute** :

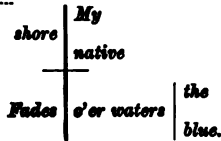
4. (*Before a participle.*) The teacher being sick, we did not recite on Monday.
5. (*Participle omitted.*) The war at an end, the soldiers returned.



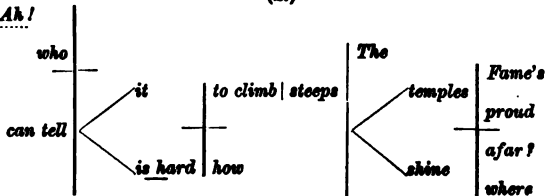
2. The following sentences illustrate the use of the **Interjection** :

1. Adieu, adieu! My native shore
Fades o'er the waters blue.
2. Ah! who can tell how hard it is to climb
The steeps where Fame's proud temples shine afar?

(1.)

Adieu, adieu!

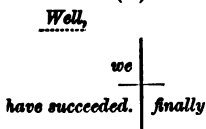
(2.)

Ah!

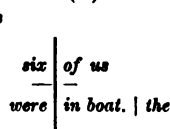
3. The following sentences illustrate the use of the **Independent Adverb** :

1. Well, we have finally succeeded.
2. There were six of us in the boat.
3. Yes, he will come.
4. Now, there is at Jerusalem, by the sheep-market, a pool.

(1.)



(2.)



INTRODUCTORY NOTE.

IN considering the difficulties presented by the many sentences in the following pages, it must be borne in mind that no effort is made to discuss all the words and relations. Many of the sentences contain but a single difficulty; others, two or three; and some, many more. It is the aim of the author to discuss briefly those only which present difficult points to the ordinary student or teacher of English grammar.

Some of the sentences present no complicated structure whatever: most of such sentences have been omitted, because a discussion of them could be of no possible benefit to any one who knows anything on the subject.

The author is well aware that exceptions may be taken to some of the positions he assumes, but the offices of words in some cases shade so imperceptibly into each other that there may be an honest difference of opinion, and no one can claim infallibility for his own decisions. Frequently two persons in reading a sentence get different meanings from the same expression. In that case either may be correct, according to the interpretation put on the sentence.

Sentences should be interpreted liberally, and not according to the dictum of any one author on Grammar. For this reason the following pages contain only *hints* and *helps* on the subject, and not arbitrary decisions. They are meant to be an aid to the private student and to the teacher of Grammar, who has not always the time or opportunity to examine authorities on each construction.

SENTENCES

FROM

RAUB'S PRACTICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

NOTE.—The first number preceding each sentence in the following pages indicates the page; the second, the number of the sentence. The comment in each case follows the example.

45—2. He that loveth God will do diligence to please God by his works.

Diligence, a noun, object of *will do*.

45—8. When death strikes down the innocent and young, for every fragile form from which he sets the parting spirit free, a hundred virtues rise, in shapes of mercy, charity, and love, to walk the world and bless it.

Innocent and *young* are nouns in the objective after *strikes down*, a complex verb. *Spirit* is a noun, in the objective after the complex verb *sets free*. *World* is a noun, in the objective after *to walk*.

45—9. The little I have seen of the world, and known of the history of mankind, teaches me to look on the errors of others in sorrow, and not in anger.

Little is a noun, in the nominative to *teaches*. *Which* understood is the direct object of *have seen* and *known*. *To look* modifies *teaches*. *Not* modifies the phrase *in anger*.

45—10. The busy click of machinery, the merry ring of the

anvil, the lowing of peaceful herds, and the song of the harvest-home, are sweeter music than the pæans of departing glory or songs of triumph in war.

Pwans is a noun, in the nominative to *are* understood.
Songs is a noun, in the nominative to *are* understood.

46—12. The breaking waves dashed high
 On a stern and rock-bound coast,
 And the woods against a stormy sky
 Their giant branches tossed.

High is an adverb, modifying *dashed*. *Woods* is a noun, in the nominative to *tossed*. *Branches* is a noun, in the objective after *tossed*.

46—14. The sea, the sea, the open sea,
 The blue, the fresh, the ever free;
 Without a mark, without a bound,
 It runneth the earth's wide regions round.

Sea, sea, sea are nouns, in the nominative independent by pleonasm.

50—21. The wall was built solid. We painted the door white.
Solid is a predicate adjective, after *was built*. *White* is a factitive adjective, after *painted*.

58—1. Evil thoughts are more dangerous than wild beasts.

Beasts is a noun, in the nominative case to *are* understood.

53—2. There is no better relief to study than the regular performance of special duties in the house.

There is an independent adverb. *Relief* is a noun, in the nominative to *is*. *Performance* is a noun, in the nominative to *is* understood.

54—4. On the grassy bank stood a tall waving ash, sound to the very top.

Ash is the subject of the sentence. *Sound* is an adjective, modifying *ash*.

54—5. A happy life means prudent compromise.

Compromise is a noun, in the objective after *means*.

54—6. A cheerful temper, joined with innocence, will make beauty attractive, knowledge delightful, and wit good-natured.

Attractive is a factitive adjective, referring to *beauty*.
Delightful is a factitive adjective, referring to *knowledge*.
Good-natured is a factitive adjective, referring to *wit*.

54—8. A wide, rich heaven hangs above you, but it hangs high. A wide, rough world is around you, and it lies very low.

High is a predicate adjective, referring to *it*. *Low* is also a predicate adjective, referring to *it*.

54—9. New occasions teach new duties ;
 Time makes ancient good uncouth,
 They must upward still, and onward,
 Who would keep abreast the truth.

Uncouth is a factitive adjective referring to *good*. *Go* is understood after *must*. *Abreast* is a predicate adjective referring to *who*. *Truth* is in the objective after *keep abreast*.

59—4. People seem to improve when they have no model but themselves to copy after.

Themselves is a pronoun, in the objective after *but* used as a preposition. *To copy after* modifies *model*.

59—6. He that has his own troubles and the happiness of his neighbors to disturb him has work enough.

He is a pronoun, in the nominative to *has*, in second line.

59—7. When my eyes shall be turned to behold for the last time the sun in heaven, may I not see him shining on the broken and dishonored fragments of a once-glorious Union !

I is a pronoun, in the nominative to *may see*. *Shining* is a participle, modifying *him*.

59—8. The sea is *His*, and *He* made it.

His is a pronoun, having the possessive form, but in the nominative case after *is*.

60—11. Mine be a cot beside the hill.

Mine is a personal pronoun, in the nominative to *may be*, *may* being understood.

60—12. *His* is that language of the heart

In which the answering heart would speak.

His, a pronoun, is in the nominative to *is*.

64—1. What we learn in our youth grows up with us, and in time becomes a part of the mind itself.

What is a relative pronoun having a double construction; it is in the objective after *learn*, and in the nominative to *grows* and *becomes*. *Part* is a noun, in the nominative after *becomes*. *Itself* is a pronoun, in the objective by apposition with *mind*.

64—2. There are men who always fail in whatever they undertake, simply because they are always behind time.

Whatever is a pronoun having a double construction; it is in the objective after *in*, and in the objective after *undertake*.

64—3. Grace is to the body what good sense is to the mind.

What is a pronoun having a double construction it is in the nominative after *is*; also in the nominative after the second *is*.

65—5. He who every morning plans the transactions of the day, and follows out that plan, carries on a thread which will guide him through the labyrinth of the most busy life.

He is a pronoun, in the nominative to *carries*. *Who* is a pronoun, in the nominative to *plans* and *follows out*, the latter being a complex verb. *Morning* is a noun, in the objective after a preposition understood.

65—6. My sword and yours are kin.

Yours is a pronoun, in the nominative to *are*.

65—7. He that doth not know those things which are of use for him to know is but an ignorant man, whatever he may know besides.

He is a pronoun, in the nominative to *is*. *Whatever* is a pronoun, in the objective after *may know*.

65—8. Ethics is the science of the laws which govern our actions as moral agents.

Agents is in apposition with *our*, in the possessive. *As* is a conjunction, connecting the words in apposition.

65—9. Most men know what¹ they hate, few what² they love.

*What*¹ is a pronoun having a double construction ; it is in the objective after *know*, also in the objective after *hate*. *What*² is a pronoun having a double construction : it is in the objective after *know* understood, also in the objective after *love*.

65—10. The troops entered the Alhambra, the gates of which were wide open, and all its splendid courts and halls silent and deserted.

Open is a predicate adjective, referring to *gates*. *Wide* is an adverb, modifying *open*. *Silent* and *deserted* are predicate adjectives, referring to *courts* and *halls*.

65—12. Life! I know not what thou art,
But know that thou and I must part ;
And when, or how, or where we met,
I own to me's a secret yet.

Life is a noun, in the nominative independent. *What* is a pronoun, in the objective after *know*, and in the nominative after *art*. *Secret* is a noun, in the nominative after *is*.

65—16. Whoever thinks a faultless piece to see,
Thinks what ne'er was, nor is, nor e'er shall be.

Whoever is a pronoun having a double construction ; it is in the nominative to *thinks* in each line. *What* is a pronoun, in the objective after *thinks*, and in the nominative to *was, is, and shall be*.

65—17. O little hands, that, weak or strong,
Have still to serve or rule so long,
Have still so long to give or ask—
I, who so much with book and pen
Have toiled among my fellow-men,
Am weary, thinking of your task.

I am weary, thinking, etc. is the main clause. *Thinking* modifies *I*. *Hands* is a noun, in the nominative independent.

97—1. My lord, you know I love you.

Lord is a noun, in the nominative independent.

97—5. It is said that many an unlucky young urchin is induced to run away from his family, and betake himself to a seafaring life, from reading the history of Robinson Crusoe.

All that follows *said* is explanatory of *it*, which the clause modifies. *Many an* is a complex adjective, modifying *urchin*. *Betake* is a verb in the infinitive mode, modifying *is induced*.

97—6. The best part of our knowledge is that which teaches us where knowledge leaves off and ignorance begins.

Us is the indirect object of *teaches*. *Leaves off* is a complex verb, agreeing with *knowledge*.

97—8. It is excellent discipline for an author to feel that he must say all he has to say in the fewest possible words.

To feel is a verb in the infinitive mode, explanatory of *it*. The clause beginning with *that* is the direct object of *to feel*.

97—11. As we proceeded, the timid approach of twilight became more perceptible.

Perceptible is a predicate adjective after *became*.

97—12. The aim of education is to show our youth the broad line of demarcation between the value of those things which can be owned by but one, and those which can be owned and enjoyed by all.

To show is a verb in the infinitive mode, used here as an attribute. *Youth* is the indirect object of *to show*. *Those* in last line is an adjective pronoun, in the objective after *of* understood.

97—13. The mistletoe hung on the castle-hall,
The holly branch shone on the old oak wall,
And the baron's retainers were blithe and gay,
And keeping their Christmas holiday.

Blithe and *gay* are predicate adjectives, referring to *retainers*. *Keeping* = were keeping.

98—14. The old mayor climbed the belfry tower,
The ringers ran by two, by three,
"Pull! if ye never pulled before;
Good ringers, pull your best," quoth he.

Two, *three*, used as nouns, are in the objective after *by*. *Ringers*, fourth line, is a noun in the nominative independent. *Best* is an adjective, modifying a noun understood. *He* is a pronoun, in the nominative to *quoth*.

98—15. Be still, and gaze thou on, false king!
And tell me what is this.

King, a noun, is in the nominative independent. *What*, a pronoun, is in the nominative after *is*, *this* being the subject.

103—2. Elocution, in order to be perfect, must convey the meaning clearly, forcibly, and agreeably.

Perfect is an adjective, used abstractly after *to be*.

103—4. It is interesting to notice how some minds seem almost to create themselves, springing up under every disadvantage.

Interesting is a predicate adjective after *is*. *To notice*, a verb in the infinitive mode, is explanatory of the subject *it*. *Seem* is a verb, agreeing with *minds*. *To create* is a verb in the infinitive mode, modifying *seems*. *Springing* is a participle, referring to *minds*.

103.—5. Without labor, what is there?¹ Without it, there² were n; world itself.

*There*¹ is an independent adverb; also *there*.² *Were* is a verb in the subjunctive mode, agreeing with *world*.

104—6. In vain imagination seeks to extend itself in our cultivated fields; it everywhere meets the habitations of men.

In vain is an adverbial phrase, modifying *seeks*.

104—7. Education, to accomplish the ends of good government, should be universally diffused.

To accomplish modifies *should be diffused*.

104—9. Once Switzerland was free! With what a pride
I used to walk these hills, look up to heaven,
And bless God that it was so!

Once is an adverb, modifying *was*. *What* is an adjective, modifying *pride*. *Used* is a verb, agreeing with *I*. *To walk* is a verb, modifying *used*. *Look* is a verb in the infinitive mode, modifying *used*. *Bless* is a verb in the infinitive mode, modifying *used*. *That it was so* is a modifier of *bless*.

104—10. While I nodded, nearly napping, suddenly there came a tapping,
As of some one gently rapping, rapping at my chamber door.

Napping is a participle, modifying *I*. *There* is an independent adverb. *Tapping* is a participial noun, in the

nominative to *came*. *Rapping* is a participle, modifying *one*. *As* is a conjunction = *as* (if it were the sound) of *some one*, etc.

www.libtool.com.cn

108—2. Everything good in man leans on what is higher.

Everything is a noun, in the nominative to *leans*. *Good* is a predicate adjective after *is* understood = *Everything* (that is) *good*, etc. *What* is a pronoun, in the objective after *on*, and in the nominative to *is*.

108—4. One by one the objects of our affection depart from us.

One by one may be taken as a complex adverb, meaning *successively*, or it may be expanded to "one followed by one."

108—6. As a rule, the hottest water of the Gulf Stream is at, or near, the surface.

As seems to be used here as a preposition, the phrase *as a rule* modifying a participle, (probably *regarded*) understood.

108—7. My life is like the summer rose
That opens to the morning sky,
But, ere the shades of evening close,
Is scattered on the ground—to die.

Like is an adjective, referring to *life*. *Rose* is a noun, in the objective after a preposition understood. *Ere* is a conjunctive adverb, connecting the clauses. *To die* is a verb, modifying *is scattered*.

109—8. They sat in silent watchfulness the sacred cypress-tree about.

Cypress-tree is a noun, the object of the preposition *about*.

109—9. Poor wanderers of a stormy day,
From wave to wave we're driven.

Wanderers, a noun, is in apposition with *we*.

111—1. Death is at all times solemn, but never so¹ much so¹ as at sea.

*So*² is an adjective used instead of the word *solemn*. *Much* is an adverb, modifying *so*.² *So*¹ is an adverb modifying *much*. *As* is a conjunctive adverb, *as at sea* being a contraction of a subordinate proposition, "as it is at sea."

111—2. But the recorded experience and wisdom of others may be of the greatest aid and benefit to us.

But is an introductory conjunction. *Aid* and *benefit* are nouns, in the objective after the preposition *of*.

111—3. Inaction is the symbol of death, if it is not death itself.

If is a subordinate conjunction, connecting the subordinate to the principal clause. *Itself* is a pronoun, in apposition with *death*.

111—5. Let not the emphasis of hospitality be in bed and board, but let truth and love and honor and courtesy flow in all thy deeds.

Flow is a verb in the infinitive mode, modifying *let*.

111—6. The characteristic peculiarity of *Pilgrim's Progress* is,¹ that it is² the only work of its kind which possesses a strong human interest.

NOTE.—All that follows *is*¹ is the attribute of the main clause.

112—7. And now, farewell! Time unrevoked has run
His wonted course, yet what I wished is done.

Unrevoked is an adjective, modifying *time*. *What* is in the objective after *wished*, and in the nominative to *is done*.

112—8. But who the melodies of morn can tell?

But is an introductory conjunction. *Melodies* is a noun, in the objective after *can tell*.

112—1. Ha! laugh'st thou, Lochiel, my vision to scorn?

Lochiel is a noun, in the nominative case independent. *Vision*, a noun, is the direct object of *laugh'st*.

112—3. Oh soothe him whose pleasures like thine pass away.

Like is a conjunctive adverb; *pass away* is understood after *pleasures*. *Thine* is here used as the subject of *pass away* understood.

113—5. Oh, it is excellent

To have a giant's strength; but it is tyrannous

To use it like a giant.

To have, a verb in the infinitive, is explanatory of *it* in the first line, and is used as an adjective element. *To use* is a verb in the infinitive, explanatory of *it* in the second line. *Like* is a conjunctive adverb. *Giant* is a noun, in the nominative to *uses* understood.

113—6. Adieu, adieu! My native shore

Fades o'er the waters blue.

Blue is an adjective, modifying *waters*.

113—7. Farewell, farewell to thee, Araby's daughter!

Daughter is a noun in the nominative independent.

116—1. It is not labor that makes things valuable, but their being valuable that makes them worth laboring for.

Labor is a predicate nominative after *is*. *That makes things valuable* is explanatory of the subject *it* and modifies it. *Valuable* is a factitive adjective, referring to *things*. *It is* is understood before *their being valuable*. *That makes*, etc. is explanatory of *it* understood in the second main clause. *Worth* (makes worth) is a factitive adjective referring to *them*. *Laboring for* is a complex participle, used as a noun, following a preposition understood.

116—2. Science, art, literature, philosophy,—all that man has done,—the experience that has been bought with the sufferings of a hundred generations,—all have been garnered up for us in the world of books.

Science, art, literature, philosophy, and experience are subjects of *have been garnered up*. *All* and *all* are adjective pronouns, in apposition with the subjects. *That* (in the first line) is in the objective after *has done*.

116—3. It is pity that,¹ commonly, more care is had—yea, and that² among very wise men—to find out rather a cunning man¹ for their horse than a cunning man² for their children.

*That*¹ is a subordinate conjunction, connecting the clauses. *Yea* is an independent adverb. *That*² is an adjective pronoun referring to a noun understood. The omission is probably (care is had) *among*, etc. *To find out* = ascertain, is a verb in the infinitive, modifying *care*. *Rather*, an adverb, is a modifier of *to find out*. *Man*¹ is object of the verb *to find out*. *Than* is a conjunction, connecting clauses. *Man*² is object of the verb *to find out*, understood.

117—4. Our work is a divine work. We carry on what God began. What a glorious spectacle is that of the labor of man upon the earth! Look around and tell me what you see that is worth seeing that is not the work of your hands¹ and the hands² of your fellows,—the multitude of all ages.

Carry on is a complex verb, agreeing with *we*. *What* (first line) is object of *carry on* and of *began*. *What* (second line) is an adjective, limiting *spectacle*. *Upon the earth* modifies *labor*. *What* (third line) is an adjective pronoun, object of *see*. *Worth* is a predicate adjective after *is*. *Seeing*, used as a noun, is in the objective after a preposition understood. *Hands*² is the object of a preposition understood. *Multitude* is in apposition with *fellows*.

117—5. Whatever we see or perceive in heaven or on earth is the product of labor. The sky above us, the ground beneath us, the air we breathe, the sun, the moon, the stars, what are they? The product of labor. They are the labors of the Omnipotent, and all our labors are but a continuance of His.

Whatever is object of *see* and *perceive*, and subject of *is*. *What* is in the nominative after *are*. *They* is in apposition with *sky, ground, air, etc.* *Product* is a noun, in the nominative after *are* understood. *His* is a pronoun, in the objective after *of*.

117—7. Men are but children of a larger growth.

But is an adverb, modifying *are*.

117—8. What nothing earthly gives or can destroy,
The soul's calm sunshine and the heartfelt joy,
Is virtue's prize.

What is subject of *is* and object of *gives* and *can destroy*. *Sunshine* is in the nominative by apposition with the antecedent part of *what*. *Joy* is in the nominative by apposition with the antecedent part of *what*. *Prize* is a noun, in the nominative after *is*.

117—9. The soul, secured in her existence, smiles
At the drawn dagger, and defies its point.

Secured is a participle, modifying *soul*.

117—10. Ill fares the land, to hastening ills a prey,
Where wealth accumulates and men decay.

Ill is an adverb, modifying *fares*. *Where* is a relative adverb equivalent to *in which*. *Prey* is a noun, in apposition with *land*.

117—11. He is the freeman whom the truth makes free,
And all are slaves beside.

Free is a factitive adjective, referring to *whom*. *All* is an adjective pronoun, the subject of the second member. *Beside* is an adjective, relating to *all*.

- 117—12. Variety's the spice of life,
That gives it all its flavor.

It is in the objective after *to* understood. *Flavor* is the direct object of *gives*.

- 117—13. 'Tis distance lends enchantment to the view,
And robes the mountain in its azure hue.

Lends is a verb, agreeing with *that* understood. (*That*) *lends enchantment*, etc. modifies *it* ('t).

- 117—14. Our birth is but a sleep and a forgetting;
The soul that rises with us, our life's star,
Hath had elsewhere its setting,
And cometh from afar.

But is an adverb, modifying *is*. *Star* is in apposition with *soul*. *Afar* is an adverb used as a noun, in the objective after *from*.

- 117—15. Call not that man wretched who, whatever ills he suffers, has a child to love.

Wretched is a factitive adjective, referring to *man*. *Whatever* is an adjective, modifying *ills*. *Ills* is a noun, in the objective after *suffers*. *To love* is a verb in the infinitive, modifying *child*.

- 118—16. They say, "This shall be," and it is,
For ere they act they think.

The object of *say* is "*This shall be*." *Ere* is a conjunctive adverb, connecting *they think* and *they act*. *For* is a subordinate conjunction connecting the clauses.

- 118—17. The enemy, having his country wasted, what by himself and what by the soldiers, findeth succor in no place

Having is a participle, modifying *enemy*. *Wasted* is a participle, modifying *country*. *What* and *what* are adverbs, meaning *partly*, and modify the phrases *by himself* and *by soldiers*.

118—18. Love,¹ and love² only, is the loan for love.

*Love*² is a noun, in apposition with *love*.¹ *Only* is an adjective, modifying *love*.²

www.libtool.com.cn

118—19. "Banished¹ from Rome!" What's banished,² but set free

From daily contact of the things I loathe?

*Banished*¹ is a participle, modifying *I* understood.

*Banished*² is a predicate participle (attribute). *But* (except) is a preposition. *Set free* is a complex participle, used as a noun in the objective after *but*.

118—20. Hard by a cottage chimney smokes
From betwixt two aged oaks.

Hard by is a complex adverb, modifying *smokes*. *From betwixt* is a complex preposition, showing the relation between *oaks* and *smokes*.

118—21. Good-bye, proud world! I'm going home;
Thou art not my friend, and I'm not thine.

Good-bye is an interjection. *Home* is an adverb. By some it is given as a noun in the objective without a governing word. *Thine* is a pronoun, in the nominative after *am*.

118—22. So live, that when thy summons comes to join
The innumerable caravan, which moves
To that mysterious realm where each shall take
His chamber in the silent halls of death,
Thou go not, like the quarry slave at night,
Scourged to his dungeon, but, sustained and soothed
By an unfaltering trust, approach thy grave
Like one who wraps the drapery of his couch
About him, and lies down to pleasant dreams.

So is an adverb, modifying *live*. *Where* is a relative adverb, equivalent to *in which*. *That* (first line) is a

conjunction (*So live, that thou go, etc.*) *Like* (fifth line) is an adverb (*like the quarry slave goes*). *Sustained* and *soothed* are participles, modifying *thou*. *Like* (eighth line) is a conjunctive adverb (*Like one approaches, etc.*).

KINDS OF SENTENCES.

121—6. "But why do you go?" said the lady.

A declarative sentence, containing an interrogative clause.

124—9. "Shall I have naught that is fair?" saith he,
"Have naught but the bearded grain?"

A complex sentence, containing two interrogative subordinate clauses.

124—10. A man of real merit is never seen in so favorable a light as through the medium of adversity.

A complex sentence with an abridged subordinate clause, "*as* (he appears when he is seen) *through the medium of adversity.*"

124—13. Soldier, rest! thy warfare o'er,
Dream of fighting fields no more.

This is a compound sentence.

125—17. Life bears us on like the stream of a mighty river.

A complex sentence, containing the two clauses, "*Life bears us on*" and "*the stream of a mighty river (bears us on),*" connected by the conjunctive adverb *like*.

130—1. Without knowledge there can be no sure progress.

There is an independent adverb.

130—2. The Golden Rule contains the very life and soul of politeness.

Of politeness modifies both *life* and *soul*.

130—4. On the diffusion of education among the people rest the preservation and perpetuation of our free institutions.

Preservation and perpetuation are both modified by *of institutions*.

130—5. The hardest way of learning is by easy reading.

The predicate is *is by reading, by reading* being a phrase attribute.

130—7. Reading without purpose is sauntering, not exercise.

The expression *not exercise* expanded means (It is) ~~not~~ *exercise*.

130—8. There is a tide in the affairs of men

Which, taken at the flood, leads on to fortune.

Tide is the subject, and *is* the predicate. *There* is an independent adverb. *Taken, etc.* modifies *which*.

131—3. Fatigue generally begins, and is always increased, by calculating in a minute the exertion of hours.

By calculating modifies *begins* and *is increased*.

131—4. Honor lies in doing well whatever we find to do.

Doing is modified by *well*, and by the objective clause *we find whatever to do*.

132—6. Language is the amber in which a thousand precious thoughts have been safely imbedded and preserved.

Is amber is the predicate. *Amber* is modified by the subordinate clause, "a thousand precious thoughts have been safely imbedded and preserved in which." *A thousand* is by some given as a complex adjective, modifying *thoughts*. Properly the preposition *of* is understood after *thousand* (a thousand of thoughts).

132—8. A great man is always willing to be little.

Always modifies *is*. *To be little* modifies *willing*.

132—9. But who the melodies of morn can tell?

But is an introductory conjunction.

132—10. The smallest bark on life's tempestuous ocean
Will leave a track behind for evermore.

Behind is an adverb, modifying *will leave*. *For evermore* is an adverbial phrase, modifying the predicate *will leave*.

132—1. The best-laid plans, the most important affairs, the fortunes of individuals, the weal of nations, honor, life itself, are daily sacrificed because somebody is behind time.

The subjects are *plans, affairs, fortunes, weal, honor, and life*. *Itself* is in apposition with *life*. *Behind time* is a phrase attribute, referring to *somebody*.

132—2. The vine-clad cottage of the hillside, the cabin of the woodsman, and the rural home of the farmer are the true citadels of any country.

Citadels is a noun attribute after *are*.

132—3. The ocean, the mountains, the clouds, the heavens, the stars, the rising and setting sun, all overflow with beauty.

Rising and *setting* are adjectives modifying *sun*. *All* is an adjective pronoun, in apposition with *ocean, mountains, etc.*, and a modifier of these.

133—4. No arch nor column in courtly English, or courtlier Latin, sets forth the deeds and the worth of the Father of his country.

Sets forth is the predicate. It is modified by the phrases *in English* and (in) *Latin*. The phrase of *Father* modifies both *deeds* and *worth*.

133—5. The sorrow for the dead is the only sorrow from which we refuse to be divorced.

The clause *we refuse to be divorced from which* modifies *sorrow*.

133—7. Honor and shame from no condition rise ;
Act well your part, there all the honor lies.

This is a compound sentence. The second line is complex, the subordinate clause being (for) *there all the honor lies*.

133—8. The more we live, more brief appear
Our life's succeeding stages.

Our modifies *life's*, and *life's* modifies *stages*. *Appear brief*, equivalent to *are brief*, is the predicate. The connective of the subordinate clause is understood ; *we* is the subject and *live*, the predicate ; *more*, an adverb, modifies *live*, and *the*, an adverb, modifies *more*.

135—1. A¹ cottage flower gives honey to the bee—a² king's garden, none to the butterfly.

A¹ modifies *flower* and a² modifies *king's*. *Gives* is understood in the second clause.

135—3. Energy is the steam-power, the motive principle, of intellectual capacity.

Principle is a noun, in apposition with *steam-power*.

135—4. The charities of life are scattered everywhere, enameling the vales of human beings as the flowers paint the meadows.

Enameling modifies *charities*. The clause "as the flowers paint the meadows" modifies *enameling*.

135—7. Hang around your walls pictures which shall tell stories of mercy, hope, courage, faith, and charity.

The subject in this sentence is understood. *Stories* is modified by the phrases *of mercy*, (of) *hope*, (of) *courage*, (of) *faith*, and (of) *charity*.

135—8. Make your living-room the largest and most cheerful in the house.

Largest and *cheerful* are factitive adjectives, the predicate is therefore *make largest and cheerful*.

185—9. Those who contract thoughtless and rude habits toward members of their own family will be rude and thoughtless to all the world.

Rude and *thoughtless* (in second line) are both predicate adjectives.

185—10. While we commend the character and example of Washington to others, let us not forget to imitate it ourselves.

Us is the direct object, with *ourselves* in apposition. (To) *forget* modifies the verb *let*.

185—11. The books which help you most are those which make you think most.

NOTE.—See page 21 for the analysis of this sentence.

185—12. A man is the happier through life for having once made an agreeable tour or lived for any length of time among pleasant people.

Having made is a participle, used as a noun after the preposition *for*. *The* is an adverb, modifying *happier*. *Lived* is equivalent to *having lived*.

185—13. True, conscious honor is to feel no sin;
He's armed without that's innocent within.

To feel is an attribute after *is*.

186—14. The stars shall fade away, the sun himself
Grow dim with age, and Nature sink in years;
But thou shalt flourish in immortal youth,
Unhurt amid the war of elements,
The wreck of matter, and the crash of worlds.

Himself, in apposition with *sun*, is an adjective modifier. *Grow dim* is equivalent to *shall grow dim*, *dim* being an attribute; *shall grow* is equivalent to *shall become*. *Unhurt* is an adjective, modifying *thou*.

186—17. Know then this truth, enough for man to know—
Virtue alone is happiness below.

Truth is modified by the clause in apposition, *Virtue alone is happiness below*. *Alone* is an adjective, modify-

ing *virtue*. *Below* is an adverb, modifying *is*. *Enough* modifies *truth*. By some authorities *enough* is given as part of an abridged clause (*which to know is enough for man*).

136—19. There Honor comes, a pilgrim gray,
To deck the earth that wraps their clay.

Pilgrim is in apposition with *Honor*, the subject.

138—1. Blessed be the hand that prepares a pleasure for a child! for there is no saying when and where it may again bloom forth.

Hand is the subject of the sentence. *For there is no saying*, etc. is the subordinate clause, modifying *be blessed*. The subject of the subordinate clause is *saying*, modified by *no*, and by the clause *it may bloom forth again when and where*.

138—2. Lying is a great sin against God, who gave us a tongue to speak the truth, and not falsehood.

To speak modifies *gave*. *Not* modifies *to speak* understood.

138—3. It is the ancient feeling of the human heart that knowledge is better than riches; and it is deeply and sacredly true.

The subject is *it*, modified by the explanatory clause *that knowledge is better than riches* (are).

139—4. None are poorer because others are made rich.

Rich is a predicate adjective after *are made*.

139—8. A lie which is all a lie may be met and fought with outright.

But a lie which is half a truth is a harder matter to fight.

All is an adverb, modifying *is*, in the sense of *wholly*. The predicate verbs in the first clause are *may be met* (with) and *may be fought with*. *Outright* is an adverb,

modifying the predicate verbs. In the second member the predicate is *is half*, *half* being modified by (of) *truth*.

139—9. Mortals that would follow me,
Love Virtue; she alone is free.

Alone is an adjective, modifying *she*.

140—1. It is faith in something, and enthusiasm for something, that make a life worth looking at.

It is the subject, modified by the explanatory clause, *that make*, etc. The predicate of the subordinate clause is *make worth*, *worth* being a factitive adjective. *Life* is the direct object of *make worth*. *Looking at* is a complex participle, used as a noun, object of a preposition understood.

140—2. If we work upon marble, it will perish; if we work upon brass, time will efface it; if we rear temples, they will crumble into dust.

The clauses in these members are all transposed, the subordinate clause coming first.

140—3. Hope, only Hope, of all that clings
Around us, never spreads her wings.

The second word *Hope* is in apposition with the subject *Hope*. *Of all that clings around us* modifies the subject.

140—4. Better for a man to possess manners than wealth, beauty, or talent.

This sentence expanded is equivalent to (It is) *better for a man to possess manners than* (it is good to possess) *wealth*, etc. The subject *it* is modified by *to possess manners*. In the second clause, the understood subject (it) is modified by (to possess) *wealth, beauty, or talent*.

140—5. It is better to inspire the heart with a noble sentiment than to teach the mind a truth of science.

It, the subject, is modified by the explanatory phrase *to*

inspire, etc. The subject of the second part of the sentence is *it* understood (it is good). The phrase *to teach*, etc. modifies the subject.

140—6. Nature is full of freaks, and now puts an old head on young shoulders, and then a young heart beating under fourscore winters.

Then modifies *puts* understood. *Under fourscore winters* also modifies *puts* understood. *Beating*, a participle, modifies *heart*.

140—7. When a deed is done for freedom, through the broad earth's aching breast

Runs a thrill of joy prophetic, trembling on from east to west.

Trembling modifies *thrill*, the subject of the chief clause. *On*, an adverb, modifies *trembling*. *The* modifies *earth's*.

141—1. The savage believed that to every man there is an appointed time to die.

The clause introduced by *that* is the direct object of *believed*. *There* is an independent adverb.

141—2. Montezuma displayed all the energy and enterprise in the commencement of his reign which had been anticipated from him.

The clause *which had been*, etc. modifies *energy* and *enterprise*.

141—3. Bunyan is almost the only writer that ever gave to the abstract the interest of the concrete.

Almost, an adverb, modifies *only*.

141—4. We admire the great deeds of Howard's benevolence, and wish that all men were like him.

In the subordinate clause, the predicate is *were like*, the preposition *to* being understood before *him*.

141—5. One of the illusions is, that the present hour is not the critical, the decisive hour.

All that follows the first *is* is the attribute of the main clause. www.libtool.com.cn

141—6. Ye have heard that it hath been said, An eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth.

Heard is modified by all that follows as an objective clause element. *It* is modified by the explanatory clauses, *An eye* (shall be given) *for an eye*, and *a tooth* (shall be given) *for a tooth*.

141—7. Rivers will always have a shingly shore to play over, where they may be shallow, and foolish, and childlike; and another steep shore, under which they can prance and purify themselves, and get their strength of waves fully together for due occasion.

To play over modifies *shore*. *Shore* is modified also by the clause introduced by *where*, a relative adverb. The attribute is compound. In the second clause the predicates are *can prance*, (*can*) *purify*, and (*can*) *get together* = (*can concentrate*).

141—8. Oh joy! that in our embers
 Is something that doth live—
 That Nature yet remembers
 What was so fugitive!

This sentence is equivalent to *Oh* (it is) *joy*, etc., the subject being *it* understood, which is modified by the clause, *that something is in our embers that doth live*. *That doth live* modifies *something*. *It* is modified also by *That Nature yet remembers*, etc.

147—2. Religion is the most gentlemanly thing in the world.

In world is an adjective element, modifying *thing*.

147—3. Earnestness alone makes life eternity.

Alone modifies *earnestness*. *Eternity* is a factitive noun, the predicate being *makes eternity* = (immortalizes).

147—6. How sweet the moonlight sleeps upon this bank!

Sleeps sweet, equivalent to *is sweet*, is the predicate.

147—8. Composition is the flowering out of a man's mind.

Is flowering out is the predicate, *is* being the copula, and *flowering out*, a complex participle, the attribute.

147—10. Westward the course of empire takes its way.

Way is the direct object of *takes*.

147—11. An effort made for the happiness of others lifts us above ourselves.

Made, a participle, modifies *effort*.

147—12. Leisure is time for doing something useful.

Something is the direct object of *doing*. *Useful* modifies the noun *something*.

147—15. In character, in manners, in style, in all things, the supreme excellence is simplicity.

The phrases, *in character*, *in manners*, *in style*, *in things*, all modify the subject *excellence*.

147—18. Beauty itself is but the sensible image of the Infinite.

Itself is in apposition with the subject *beauty*. *Only* modifies the copula *is*.

147—19. Night, sable goddess, from her ebon throne

In rayless majesty now stretches forth

Her leaden sceptre o'er a slumbering world.

Goddess, an adjective element, is in apposition with *night*. *Stretches forth*, a complex verb, is the predicate.

147—20. The splendor falls on castle-walls

And snowy summits old in story.

Old modifies both *castle-walls* and *summits*.

147—21. Among the pitfalls in our way
The best of us walk blindly.

Best is the subject, and *walk*, the predicate.

147—23. Politeness is not always a sign of wisdom.

Not modifies *always*.

148—26. True politeness is the spirit of benevolence showing
itself in a refined way.

Showing modifies *spirit*.

148—27. The end of learning is to know God, and out of that
knowledge to love Him and to imitate Him.

The attribute in this sentence is compound, consisting
of the three infinitives, *to know*, *to love*, and *to imitate*.
Out of that knowledge modifies *to love* and *to imitate*.

148—28. The chief art of learning is to attempt but little at
a time.

Is to attempt is the predicate, *to attempt* being the at-
tribute. *But*, an adverb, modifies *little*; *little* modifies a
noun understood.

148—29. The spacious firmament on high,
With all the blue ethereal sky
And spangled heavens, a shining frame,
Their great Original proclaim.

The subject of the sentence is compound, consisting of
firmament and *heavens*. *With all the blue ethereal sky*
modifies *firmament*. *Proclaim* is the predicate, and
Original, the direct object. *Frame* is in apposition with
the compound subject.

150—1. Tears are the softening showers which cause the seed
of heaven to spring up in the human heart.

The subordinate clause, *which cause*, etc., modifies
showers. *To spring up* is a complex verb, modifying
cause.

150—4. Nothing is troublesome that we do willingly.

That we do willingly modifies *nothing*. *That* is the direct object of *do*.

150—5. The best part of our knowledge is that which teaches us where knowledge leaves off and ignorance begins.

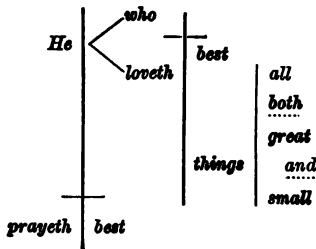
That is an attribute, modified by the subordinate clause, *which teaches*, etc. *Us* is an adverbial modifier = *teaches* (to) *us*. The direct objects of *teaches* are the two clauses, *knowledge leaves off where* and *ignorance begins* (where). *Leaves off*, the first predicate, is a complex verb.

150—7. One sweetly solemn thought
Comes to me o'er and o'er—
That I'm nearer my home to-day
Than I've ever been before.

Sweetly modifies *solemn*. *That I am nearer*, etc. is a modifier of *thought*. *Home* = (to home), modifies *nearer*. *Nearer* is modified also by the clause, *than I have ever been before*. *O'er and o'er* is a complex adverb, modifying *comes*.

150—9. He prayeth best who loveth best
All things, both great and small.

Who loveth best modifies *He*, the subject of the main clause. *Both* and *and* are correlatives. The diagram may be indicated as follows :



150—10. They are never alone that are accompanied by noble thoughts.

Are alone is the predicate of the main clause. *They* is modified by the clause, *that are accompanied*, etc.

150—11. He struck a blow in the world that resounded through the universe.

In the world modifies *struck*.

150—12. Beauty is the mark God sets on virtue.

God sets on virtue modifies *mark*. *Which* is understood after *mark*.

150—13. The books which help you most are those which make you think most.

NOTE.—See page 21 for the diagram of this sentence.

150—14. Whene'er a noble deed is wrought,
Our hearts in glad surprise
To higher levels rise.

The subordinate clause, the first line, modifies the verb *rise*.

150—15. No man who needs a monument ever ought to have one.

Ought is the predicate, modified by the infinitive *to have*, as an adverbial element.

151—17. The eternal stars shine out as soon as it is dark enough.

Shine out is the predicate, a complex verb. *As soon as* is the connective, a complex conjunctive adverb. *Enough* modifies *dark*.

151—18. No one who has once heartily and wholly laughed can be altogether irreclaimably depraved.

Altogether modifies *irreclaimably*.

151—19. This is truth the poet sings,
That a sorrow's crown of sorrow is remembering
happier things.

The clause, *the poet sings* (which), modifies the subject *this*, as an explanatory clause. The whole of the second line also modifies *this*, as a *subordinate adjective* clause. *Remembering* is a participial attribute. *A* modifies *sorrow's*.

151—20. Cursed be the social lies that warp us from the living truth.

Be cursed is the predicate, and *lies*, the subject.

151—22. How blessings brighten as they take their flight!

As is a conjunctive adverb, introducing the subordinate clause.

151—23. The poorest education that teaches self-control is better than the best that neglects it.

Best may be taken as the subject of the subordinate clause with *is* as a predicate understood, or *education* understood may be taken as the subject, in which case *best* becomes an adjective modifier.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

153—1. In peace, Love tunes the shepherd's reed;
In war he mounts the warrior's steed;
In halls in gay attire is seen,
In hamlets, dances on the green.
Love rules the court, the camp, the grove,
And men below, and gods above;
For love is heaven, and heaven is love.

In peace modifies *tunes*. *In war* modifies *mounts*. *He*, understood, is the subject in both the third and the fourth line. *Below* is an adjective element, modifying *men*. *Above* is an adjective element, modifying *gods*. The last line modifies *rules*, the predicate of the last three lines.

153—4. Be not ashamed of thy virtues; honor is a good brooch to wear in a man's hat at all times.

The subject in this sentence is understood. *Be ashamed* is the predicate, *ashamed* being an adjective attribute. *To wear* is an adjective element, modifying *brooch*. *A* modifies *man's*.

153—5. You hear that boy laughing? You think he's all fun,

But the angels laugh too at the good he has done;
The children laugh loud as they troop at his call,
And the poor man that knows him laughs loudest
of all.

NOTE.—See page 88 for the diagram of this sentence.

153—6. Now came still evening on, and twilight gray
Had in her sober livery all things clad.

NOTE.—See page 87 for the analysis of this sentence.

153—7. The accusing spirit which flew up to Heaven's chancery with the oath, blushed as he gave it in; and the recording angel, as he wrote it down, dropped a tear upon the word and blotted it out for ever.

Up modifies *flew*. *In* modifies *gave*. *As*, a conjunctive adverb, connects the clauses. *As he wrote it down* modifies *dropped*. *Dropped* and *blotted out* is the compound predicate of the second member. *For ever* is a prepositional phrase, used to modify *blotted out*, adverbially.

153—8. God's livery is a very plain one, but its wearers have good reason to be content.

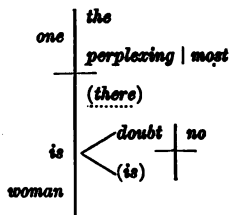
To be content modifies *reason*.

154—9. Method is the hinge of business, and there is no method without order and punctuality.

There is an independent adverb. *Without order*, etc. modifies *is*. *Without* has two objects, *order* and *punctuality*.

154—10. The proper study of mankind is man ;
The most perplexing one, no doubt, is woman.

The diagram of the second member may be given as follows :



GENERAL EXERCISES.

156—1. Green be the turf above thee,
Friend of my better days !
None knew thee but to love thee,
None named thee but to praise.

The predicate of the first line is (may) *be green*, *may* being understood, and *may be* being the copula. *Above thee* modifies *turf*. Line 2 is independent in construction. *But to love* (except to love or without loving) modifies *knew*, as an adverbial element. *But to praise* is an adverbial element, modifying *named*.

156—2. Education is a better safeguard of liberty than a standing army.

Is safeguard understood is the predicate after *army*.

156—3. Lives of great men all remind us
We may make our lives sublime,
And, departing, leave behind us
Footprints on the sands of time.

All is in apposition with *lives*. *Sublime* is a factitive adjective, *makes sublime* being the predicate of the first subordinate clause. The subject of the second subordinate clause is *we*, which is modified by the participle *departing*. *On sands* modifies *may leave*.

156—4. But words are things; and a small drop of ink,
 Falling like dew upon a thought, produces
 That which makes thousands, perhaps millions, think.

But is an introductory conjunction. *Falling*, a participle, modifies *drop*. *Like*, a conjunctive adverb, introduces the subordinate clause, *like dew* (falls). *Upon a thought* modifies *falling*. *Makes think* is the predicate of the clause in the third line, in which (to) *think* is a factitive infinitive. *Perhaps millions, think* = "perhaps it makes millions think." *Perhaps*, an adverb, modifies *makes* understood. *Millions* is the direct object of (makes) *think*.

156—5. 'Twas in autumn, and stormy and dark was the night,
 And fast were the windows and doors.

In the second member *stormy* and *dark* form a compound attribute.

156—6. He is worthy of honor who willeth the good of every man; and he is much unworthy thereof who seeketh his own profit and oppresseseth others.

The subject *He* is modified by the clause beginning *who willeth*, etc. In the second member, the subject *he* is modified by the subordinate clause, *who seeketh*, etc. *Unworthy* is modified by *much* and *thereof*.

157—7. The more¹ we live, more² brief appear
 Our life's succeeding stages;
 A day to childhood seems a year,
 And years like passing ages.

The subject of the first member is *stages*, the predicate is *appear brief*, *appear* being a copula. *More*,² an adverb, modifies *brief*. *The*, an adverb, modifies *more*.¹ *The more we live* is a subordinate clause, modifying *appear*; *we* being the subject, *live*, the predicate. *More*, an adverb, modifies *live*, and *the*, an adverb, modifies *more*.¹ In

the third line the predicate is *seems year*. In the last line, *years* (seem) *like* (unto) *passing ages*, *like* is an adjective attribute.

www.libtool.com.cn

157-8. The widest excursions of the mind are made by short flights, frequently repeated.

Repeated, a participle, modifies *flights*.

157-9. I know not what course others may take; but, as for me, give me liberty or give me death.

What is in the objective after *take*; it also limits the noun *course*. In the second member, *as for me* is probably equivalent to *as regarded for me*, in which *as* is introductory, and *regarded* is modified by the phrase *for me*; all of the expression is independent.

157-10. We live in an age in which cultivated mind is becoming more and more the controlling influence in affairs.

More and more is a complex adverb, modifying *is becoming*, the copula of the predicate *is becoming influence*.

157-11. The contemplation of beauty in nature, in art, in literature, in human character, diffuses through our being a soothing and subtle joy by which the heart's anxious and aching cares are softly smiled away.

The phrases *in nature, in art, in literature, in character*, modify *beauty*. The subordinate clause, *by which the heart's anxious, etc.*, modifies *joy*. *Are smiled away*, the predicate of the subordinate clause, is modified by *softly* and *by which*.

157-12. Full many a gem of purest ray serene

The dark, unfathomed caves of ocean bear,

Full many a flower is born to blush unseen,

And waste its sweetness on the desert air.

Gem, the direct object, is modified by the complex adjective *many a*; also by the phrase *of ray*. *Full*, an adverb, modifies the adjective *many a*. *Purest* and *serene*

are adjectives, modifying *ray*. In the second half of the stanza, *many a* modifies *flower*, and *full* modifies *many a*. *To blush unseen* is an adverbial element, modifying *is born*; the expression being equivalent to *to be unseen*, in which *unseen* is an abstract adjective after *to be*. *On air* modifies (to) *waste*.

NOTE.—See page 38 for the diagram of this sentence.

157—18. When all thy mercies, O my God,
 My rising soul surveys,
 Transported with the view, I'm lost
 In wonder, love, and praise.

The expression *O my God* is independent. *I*, the subject of the main clause, is modified by *transported*, etc. The predicate, *am lost*, is modified by the phrases *in wonder*, (in) *love*, (in) *praise*, and by the subordinate clause, *When all*, etc.

157—14. If I were not a preacher, I know of no profession on earth of which I should be fonder than that of a preceptor.

On earth modifies *profession*. The second subordinate clause, which is equivalent to the following: *I should be fonder of which than* (I am fond of) *that of a preceptor*, also modifies *profession*. In the first subordinate clause, which modifies *fonder*, the predicate is *were preacher*, not modifying *were*.

157—15. He who will determine against that which he knows, because there may be something which he knows not, is not to be admitted among reasonable beings.

The clause, *which he knows*, modifies the word *that*. In the second subordinate clause, beginning with *because there may be*, etc., *something* is the subject; it is modified by *he knows not which*. *To be admitted* is the attribute of the main proposition.

157—16. Ah, that deceit should steal such gentle shapes,
 And with a virtuous visor hide deep her vice!

Both subject and predicate of the main clause of this sentence are understood. It is probably equivalent to *Ah*, (how sad it is) *that deceit should steal such gentle shapes*, etc., in which the subordinate clause modifies the subject *it* understood, being explanatory. *Hide deep*, equivalent to (*should*) *hide deep*, is a part of the compound predicate, *deep* being a factitive adjective, referring to *vice*.

157—17. Nothing is proof against the general curse
 Of vanity that seizes all below ;
 The only amaranthine flower on earth
 Is virtue ; the only lasting treasure, truth.

That seizes, etc. modifies *curse*. *Below*, an adjective, modifies the adjective pronoun *all*. *Only* properly modifies the expression *amaranthine flower*, but in diagramming it must be placed next to *flower* as the basis. In the last member *is* is understood before *truth*.

159—1. To persevere in one's duty and to be silent is the best answer to calumny.

The subject is compound, consisting of *to persevere* and *to be silent*. *Silent* is used abstractly after *to be*.

159—2. Men are but children of a larger growth.

But, an adverb, modifies *are*. *Children* is a noun attribute.

159—4. All are but parts of one stupendous whole,
 Whose body Nature is, and God the soul.

But is an adverb, modifying *are*. In the first subordinate clause, *Nature* is the subject ; in the second, *God*. The predicate *is* is understood in the last clause. Both clauses modify *whole*.

159—5. When vice prevails and impious men bear sway,
The post of honor is the private station.

The two clauses, *When vice prevails* and (when) *impious men bear sway*, modify *is*.

159—6. To read without reflecting is like eating without digesting.

To read is the subject. *Is like* is the predicate, *like* being a predicate adjective, followed by a preposition understood, of which *eating*, used as a noun, is the *object*.

159—7. How beautiful is night !
A dewy freshness fills the silent air,
No mist obscures, nor cloud, nor speck, nor stain,
Breaks the serene of heaven.

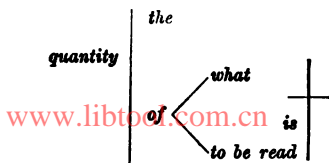
In the fourth clause the subject is compound, consisting of *cloud*, *speck*, and *stain*. “*Nor—nor*” is used by poetic license for *neither—nor*.

159—8. If fun is good, truth is better, and love best of all.

The first main clause is *Truth is better*; *better* is modified by *if fun is good*. *Is* is understood after *love*. In the last clause *is best* is the predicate.

160—9. As concerns the quantity of what is to be read, there is a single rule: Read much, but not many works.

This is equivalent to *As (it) concerns*, etc. *Rule* is the subject of the main clause. *There* is an independent adverb. *As* is a conjunction introducing the subordinate clause, of which *it* understood is the subject, and *concerns*, the predicate. *Of what is to be read* modifies *quantity*, *of* being the preposition, and the clause being the object of the preposition. This portion of a diagram may be indicated as follows :



To be read is an infinitive attribute. The clause, *Read music*, etc., has for its subject *thou* understood, the whole clause being explanatory of *rule*, which word it modifies.

163—1. For thou art Freedom's now, and Fame's—
 One of the few, the immortal names,
 That were not born to die.

These three lines form a subordinate clause. They are preceded properly by the following :

And even she who gave thee birth
 Will, by their pilgrim-circled hearth,
 Talk of thy doom without a sigh ;

The subject *she* and the predicate *will talk* are both found in these latter lines. In the example given, *for* is the connective ; the attribute is compound, consisting of the three predicate nominatives *Freedom's*, *Fame's*, and *one*. *To die* modifies *were born*. *Not* modifies the infinitive *to die*.

163—2. Be just and fear not.
 Let all the ends thou aim'st at be thy country's,
 Thy God's, and truth's.

The subject of the first sentence is *thou* understood. Of the second sentence, *thou* understood is also the subject. *Ends*, the direct object, is modified by the clause, *thou aim'st at*. *Let* is modified also by the infinitive phrases (to) *be thy country's*, (to be) *thy God's*, and (to be) *truth's*, in which *country's*, *God's*, and *truth's* are modifiers of the word *ends* understood.

163—3. An atheist's laugh's a poor exchange for Deity offended.

Atheist's is in the possessive, limiting *laugh*. *Laugh's* is equivalent to *laugh's*; *offended* modifies *Deity*.

163—4. I dread thee, Fate, relentless and severe,
With all a poet's, husband's, father's fear.

Fate, relentless and severe, is independent. *Fear* is modified by *all, poet's, husband's, and father's*.

163—5. Tired Nature's sweet restorer, balmy sleep!

NOTE.—This is not a sentence. *Sleep* is in apposition with *restorer*.

163—6. Ye are Christ's, and Christ is God's.

Christ's is the attribute or predicate nominative in the first member, and *God's* is the predicate nominative in the second.

163—7. Each thinks his own the best pretension.

Pretension is understood after *own*, and *to be* is understood before *the*. *To be pretension* modifies *thinks*, adverbially.

163—8. There is something in their hearts which passes speech.

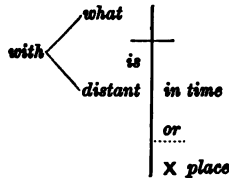
Which passes speech modifies *something*.

163—9. Land of the beautiful and brave,
The freeman's home, the martyr's grave,
The nursery of giant men,
Whose deeds are linked with every glen!
My own green land for ever!

The first four lines of this selection are independent, with the word *land* as a basis. *Home, grave, and nursery* are in apposition with *land*. The subject and the copula of the last line are both understood (Thou art). *For ever* modifies *art*.

163—10. It is a noble faculty of our nature which enables us to connect our thoughts, our sympathies, and our happiness with what is distant in place or time.

It, the subject, is modified by all that follows the word *nature*. *To connect* modifies the verb *enables*, as an adverbial element. *With what is distant*, etc. is a phrase modifier, having a clause for its basis. It may be written as follows :



166—1. If we retrench the wages of the schoolmaster, we must raise those of the recruiting sergeant.

The main clause begins with *we must raise*, etc. *Those* may be taken as the direct object of *must raise*.

166—2. A guileful heart makes a guileful tongue and lips.

Tongue and *lips* are direct objects of the predicate *makes*; both are modified by *guileful*.

166—3. He who waits to do a great deal of good at once will never do anything.

To do modifies *waits*, and is modified by the noun *deal* and the phrase *at once*.

166—4. I pray the prayer of Plato old:
 God make thee beautiful within,
 And let thine eyes the good behold
 In everything save sin!

Prayer is the direct object of *pray*. All that follows the first line is in apposition with *prayer*, modifying it adjectively. *Make beautiful*, equivalent to (may) *make beautiful*, is the predicate of the first subordinate clause, *beautiful* being a factitive adjective. In the second sub-

SANTA CLARA COUNTY
 TEACHERS LIBRARY

ordinate clause the subject is understood; (may) *let* is the predicate, having for its direct object *eyes*. (To) *behold* modifies *let*. *Everything* is modified by the phrase, *save sin*. *Good* is here used as a noun, the object of *behold*.

166—5. Put not your trust in money, but put your money in trust.

The subject in each member is understood. *Not* modifies the verb *put*.

166—6. If you are about to strive for your life, take with you a stout heart and a clear conscience, and trust the rest to God.

The first clause is subordinate, modifying the verb *take*, the predicate of the first member. *Heart* and *conscience* are direct objects of *take*. In the subordinate clause the predicate is *are about to strive*, *are* being the copula and *about to strive* a phrase attribute.

166—8. He that filches from me my good name,
 Robs me of that which not enriches him,
 And makes me poor indeed.

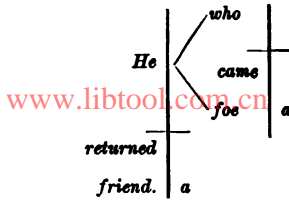
The clause, *That filches*, etc., modifies *he*. Some authorities claim that *and* connects the two verbs *robs* and *makes poor*, while others claim that it connects the two subordinate clauses, *which not enriches him* and (which) *makes me poor indeed*. The latter seems preferable.

166—9. Lorenzo, these are thoughts that make man man.

Lorenzo is in the nominative independent. The predicate of the main clause is *are thoughts*; *thoughts* is modified by the clause, *that make man¹ man,²* of which the predicate is *make man.²* The first word *man* is the direct object; the second is a factitive noun used in the predicate.

166—10. He returned a friend who came a foe.

This sentence is equivalent to *He became a friend who was a foe*. Both verbs are neuter verbs in this sentence, and are therefore used as copulas. The diagram may be given as follows:



168—1. Friends, Romans, countrymen! lend me your ears!

Friends, Romans, and countrymen are all in the nominative independent; *me* is the indirect object, and *ears* the direct object. *You*, understood, is the subject.

168—2. Those evening bells! those evening bells!
How many a tale their music tells!

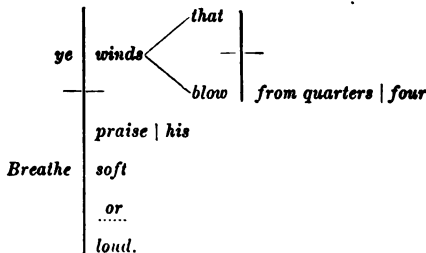
Those evening bells is independent; the second *those evening bells* is in apposition with the first. *Many a*, a complex adjective, modifies *tale*, and *how* modifies *many a*.

168—3. Her wheel at rest, the matron thrills no more
With treasured tales and legendary lore.

Her wheel (being) at rest is independent in construction. *More*, an adverb, modifies *thrills*, and *no* modifies *more*.

168—4. His praise, ye winds that from four quarters blow,
Breathe soft or loud, and wave your tops, ye pines.

Winds is in apposition with *ye*; the diagram for the first part is as follows:



In the next member *pin*es is in apposition with *ye*.

168—5. I being in the way, the Lord led me to the house of my master's brethren.

I being in the way is independent in construction, *in* *way* modifying *being*. *My* modifies *master's*.

168—6. A horse! a horse! my kingdom for a horse!

A horse! a horse! is independent in construction. The remainder is equivalent to (I will give) *my kingdom for a horse*.

168—8. O thou that rollest above, round as the shield of my fathers, whence are thy beams, O sun?

This sentence contains two independent parts; the first being the whole of the first line, and the second, *O sun*. In the first, *above*, an adverb, modifies *rollest*; *round*, which modifies *thou*, is modified by the clause *as the shield of my fathers* (is round). *Whence* modifies *are*.

168—9. O Caledonia! stern and wild,
 Meet nurse for a poetic child!
 Land of the brown heath and shaggy wood,
 Land of the mountain and the flood,
 Land of my sires! What mortal hand
 Can e'er untie the filial band
 That knits me to thy rugged strand?

The independent part of this sentence includes all ending with the word *sires* in the fifth line. *Caledonia* is modified by *stern*, *wild*, and the four words in apposition, *nurse*, *Land*, *Land*, *Land*. *Land* in the third line is modified by the phrase *of heath and wood*, the object of the preposition being compound. *Land* in the fourth line is modified by the phrase *of mountain and flood*. The subject of the sentence is *hand*, modified by *what* and *mortal*. *E'er* modifies *can untie*, the predicate.

169—10. My friends, do they now and then send
 A wish or a thought after me?

My friends is independent in construction; *now and then* is a complex adverb, modifying *send*.

169—11. ~~Thou too sail on, O ship of State!~~
Sail on, O Union, strong and great!

In the first sentence, *O ship of State* is independent; *on*, an adverb, modifies *sail*. In the second sentence, *O Union, strong and great*, is independent; *on*, an adverb, modifies *sail*.

171—1. There is no policy like politeness.

There is an independent adverb. *Policy* is the subject of the sentence; *is like* is the predicate, in which *like* is the attribute. *Like* is modified by the phrase (unto) *politeness*.

171—2. Every great man is always being helped by everybody, for his gift is to get good out of all things and all persons.

Is being helped is the predicate; it is modified by *always*, *by everybody*, and the subordinate clause beginning with *for*. In the subordinate clause *is to get* is the predicate, *to get* being the attribute. *Good*, used here as a noun, is the direct object. *Out of* is a complex preposition. *Out of things* and (out of) *persons* are both adverbial modifiers of *get*.

171—3. When Freedom from her mountain-height
Unfurled her standard to the air,
She tore the azure robe of night,
And set the stars of glory there.

The predicate of the main clause, which embraces the last two lines, is compound, consisting of *tore* and *set*. *Stars* is the direct object of *set*, and *robe* is the direct object of *tore*. In the subordinate clause, which modifies the predicate, the phrase *from her mountain-height* modifies *unfurled*.

- 171—4. Overhead the dismal hiss
Of fiery darts in flaming volleys flew.

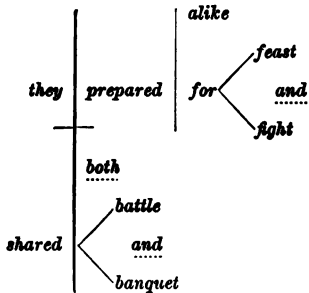
Hiss is the subject of the sentence. *Overhead* modifies *flew*. *In flaming volleys* modifies *darts*.

- 171—5. The window jingled in its crumbled frame,
And through its many gaps of destitution
Dolorous moans and hollow sighings came,
Like those of dissolution.

The subject of the main clause of the second member is compound, consisting of *moans* and *sighings*. *Came*, the predicate, is modified by *through its many gaps*, etc., and by the clause, *like those of dissolution* (come). *Like* is here a conjunctive adverb. *Come*, the predicate, is understood.

- 171—6. Alike for feast and fight prepared,
Battle and banquet both they shared.

The diagram is best represented as follows :



Prepared is a participle, modifying *they*; *alike* is an adverb, modifying *prepared*; *prepared* is modified also by the prepositional phrase *for feast and fight*. *Both* and *and* are correlative conjunctions; *battle and banquet* is the compound object.

- 171—7. At his touch crowns crumbled, beggars reigned, systems vanished.

The predicate in each of the three clauses is modified by the phrase *at his touch*.

171—8. Soldiers ~~from yonder pyramids~~ forty generations of men look down upon you.

Soldiers is independent in construction. *Look* is modified by *down*, *upon you*, and *from yonder pyramids*.

171—9. The bell strikes one. We take no note of time but from its loss.

One is the direct object of *strikes*. *But from loss* modifies *take*, *but* being a preposition followed by the phrase object *from loss*.

171—10. Presently the brook came to a spot where men had thrown hard stones in its way, obstructed its course, turned it aside through a narrow channel, and forced it to rush in a confused, perilous way over a wheel.

The predicate *came* is modified by the phrase *to spot*; *spot* is modified by the four subordinate clauses, *men had thrown*, etc., (men had) *obstructed*, etc., (men had) *turned it aside*, etc., and (men had) *forced it*, etc. *To rush* modifies *forced*, and is itself modified by *in way* and *over wheel*. *Where* in line 1 is a relative adverb.

173—1. I love thy kingdom, Lord
The house of thy abode.

Lord is in the nominative independent. *House* is in apposition with *kingdom*.

173—2. We, the people of the United States, . . . do ordain and establish this Constitution.

People is in apposition with *we*, the subject. *Constitution* is object of both *ordain* and *establish*.

173—3. O Music, sphere-descended maid,
Friend of Pleasure, Wisdom's aid!

This is not a sentence. *Maid*, *friend*, and *aid* are all in apposition with *Music*.

173—4. The harp, his sole remaining joy,
Was carried by an orphan boy.

Joy is in apposition with *harp*, the subject. *His, sole,* and *remaining* modify *joy*.

173—5. Company, villanous company, hath been the spoil
of me.

The second word *company* is in apposition with the subject *company*. The predicate is *hath been spoil*, of which *hath been* is the copula.

174—6. From bright'ning fields of ether fair disclosed,
Child of the Sun, refulgent Summer, comes.

The subject is *Summer*; *child* is in apposition with *Summer*. *Brightening* modifies *fields*, as does also the phrase *of ether*; *ether* is modified by *fair* and *disclosed*.

174—7. Go ye every man unto his city.

Man is in apposition with the subject *ye*.

174—8. His praise, ye brooks, attune.

Brooks is in apposition with the subject *ye*.

174—9. They went out one¹ by one.

*One*¹ is in apposition with *they*, the subject. *By one* is a phrase, modifying *went*. *One by one* is by some grammarians called a complex adverb.

174—10. Thus shall mankind his guardian care engage,
The promised father of a future age.

Mankind is the subject, and *shall engage*, the predicate. *Thus* modifies *shall engage*. *Care* is modified by *his*; *his* is modified by *father*, a noun in apposition without the possessive sign.

174—11. Out of this nettle, danger, we pluck this flower,
safety.

Out of nettle is a phrase, modifying *pluck*; *nettle* is

modified by *danger*, a noun in the same case by apposition. *Flower* is the direct object of *pluck*; *safety* is in apposition with *flower*.

176—3. When I was a child I spake as a child.

The natural order of this sentence is, "I spake as a child (speaks) when I was a child." The predicate *spake* is modified by both subordinate clauses.

176—5. "Behold!" said the streamlet; "to nourish this beauty is the end and aim of my life."

The predicate of the main clause is *said*. *Behold* is a verb in the imperative, with its subject understood. *To nourish* is the subject of the subordinate clause. *Is end and aim* is the predicate, of which *end and aim* is a compound attribute, both words, *end* and *aim*, being modified by the phrase *of life*.

176—6. And he returned a friend who came a foe.

NOTE.—See page 82 for this sentence.

176—7. By such a change thy darkness is made light,
Thy chaos order, and thy weakness might.

The predicate of the first member is *is made light*, *is made* being the copula. In the remaining clauses *is made* is understood; thus, *Thy chaos (is made) order*, and *thy weakness (is made) might*.

176—8. But what! is thy servant a dog?

But is an introductory conjunction; *what* is an interjection. *Servant* is the subject; *is dog* is the predicate.

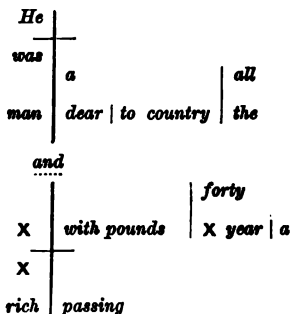
176—9. When pain and anguish wring the brow,
A ministering angel thou.

Art angel is the predicate of the main clause, *art* being understood. *Art* is modified by the subordinate clause, *when pain and anguish wring the brow*.

176—10. A man he was to all the country dear,
And passing rich with forty pounds a year.

The following diagram will explain the sentence.

www.libtool.com.cn



Was is understood before *rich*; *passing* is an adverb, modifying *rich*; a preposition is understood before *year*.

176—11. Art thou that traitor angel? Art thou he who first broke the peace of heaven?

Thou is the subject, and *art angel* the predicate, *angel* being modified by *that* and *traitor*. *Thou* is the subject of the second sentence, and *art he* the predicate.

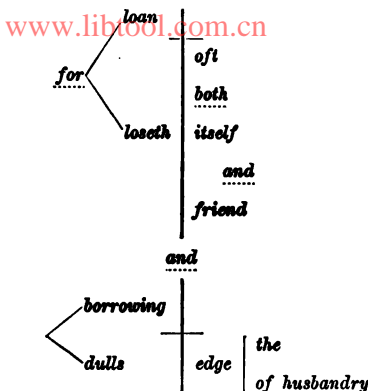
176—12. Where ignorance is bliss
'Tis folly to be wise.

It, the subject, is modified by the phrase *to be wise*, in which *wise* is an abstract adjective. *Is*, the copula, is modified by the subordinate clause, *where ignorance is bliss*.

176—13. Neither a borrower nor a lender be.
For loan oft loseth both itself and friend,
And borrowing dulls the edge of husbandry.

The subject is *thou* understood, and *be* is the copula. The attribute, *borrower nor lender*, is compound. *Neither* and *nor* are correlative conjunctions. The subordinate

clause, which modifies the predicate, is compound. It may be illustrated in diagram as follows :



180—1. Sloth makes all things difficult, but industry all easy.

Makes difficult is the predicate in the first member, in which *difficult* is a factitive adjective, referring to *things*. In the second member the predicate is (makes) *easy, easy* being a factitive adjective.

180—2. A pebble in the streamlet scant

Has turned the course of many a river ;

A dewdrop on the infant plant

Has warped the giant oak for ever.

Many a, a complex adjective, modifies *river*. *For ever*, a phrase, modifies *has warped*.

180—3. Set a high price on your leisure moments. Properly expended, they will procure for you a stock of great thoughts.

Thou is the subject of the first sentence. In the second sentence the participle *expended* modifies *they*, the subject.

180—4. The true hero is the great wise man of duty.

Is man is the predicate.

180—5. One of the illusions is, that the present hour is not the critical, decisive hour. Write it on your heart that every day is the best day of the year.

In the first sentence *is* is the copula, and all that follows, introduced by the conjunction *that*, is the attribute, which is a clause in itself, having *hour* for the subject and *is hour* for the predicate. In the second sentence all that follows *heart* is explanatory of *it*, the direct object.

181—6. A dainty plant is the ivy green,
That creepeth o'er ruins old;
Of right choice food are his meals, I ween,
In his cell so lone and cold.

Ivy is the subject; it is modified by *the, green*, and the subordinate clause, *that creepeth*, etc. *Is plant* is the predicate. Of the second member, *I* is the subject and *ween* is the predicate, modified by the subordinate clause, *of right choice food*, etc. *Meals* is the subject of the subordinate clause, and *are of food* is the predicate, *are* being the copula, and *of food*, the attribute. *Cell* is modified by *his, lone*, and *cold*; *in cell* modifies *meals*; and so modifies *lone* and *cold*. *Choice* modifies *food*, and the adverb *right* modifies the adjective *choice*.

181—7. Judges ought to be more learned than witty, more reverend than plausible, and more advised than confident.

Ought, the predicate of the main clause, is modified by the infinitive phrases, *to be learned, to be reverend*, and *to be advised*. The subordinate clause modifying *learned* is *than* (they are) *witty*. *Than* (they are) *plausible* modifies *reverend*. *Than* (they are) *confident* modifies *advised*.

184—1. Spring hangs her infant blossoms on the trees,
Rocked in the cradle of the western breeze.

Blossoms is modified by the participial phrase, *rocked in the cradle*, etc. *On the trees* modifies the predicate *hangs*.

184—2. With the talents of an angel a man may be a fool.

The subject is *man*, modified by the phrase *with the talents*, etc. *May be fool* is the predicate.

184—3. The things which are impossible with men are possible with God.

Things, the subject, is modified by the subordinate clause, *which are impossible*. *Are possible* is the predicate of the main clause.

184—4. The hand is ¹ almost valueless at one end of the arm, unless there is ² a brain at the other end.

At one end modifies *hand*. *Is valueless* is the predicate of the main clause, and *is*² of the subordinate clause. *At the other end* modifies the verb *is*.²

184—5. The will of the many and their interests must very often differ.

The subject is compound, consisting of *will* and *interests*. *Many* is here used as a noun, modified by *the*.

184—6. How brilliant and mirthful the light of her eye,
Like a star glancing out from the blue of the sky!

Light is the subject of the main clause, and (is) *brilliant and mirthful* is the predicate, in which *is* is understood, the attribute being compound. *Like*, an adjective, modifies *light*, and is modified by the phrase (unto) *a star*. *Glancing* is a participle, modifying *star*; *out* is an adverb, modifying *glancing*. *Blue* is here used as a noun in the objective after *from*.

186— This only grant me, that my means may lie
so low for envy, for contempt too high.

The subject is understood. *Grant*, the predicate, is modified by *me*, and by *this*, the direct object. *This* is modified by *only* and by the subordinate clause following *me*. *That*, a conjunction, is

the connective, *means* is the subject, and *may lie low* and (may lie) *high* form the compound predicate, in which the verbs are copulas.

www.libtool.com.cn

186—2. They shall every man turn to his own people, and flee every one into his own land.

In the first clause *man* is in apposition with *they*, the subject. In the second clause *one* is in apposition with *they*, the subject understood.

186—3. All actual heroes are essential men,
And all men possible heroes.

In the second clause *are* is omitted before *possible*.

187—4. None but the brave deserves the fair.

None is the subject, modified by the phrase *but the brave*, in which *but* is a preposition and *brave* a noun; *fair* also is here used as a noun.

187—5. All are architects of fate,
Working in these walls of time—
Some with massive deeds and great,
Some with ornaments of rhyme.

Working modifies *all*, the subject of the first member. *Are working* is understood after *some*, in each of the last two lines.

187—6. I dare do all that may become a man;
Who dares do more is none.

(To) *do* modifies *dare*, the predicate; *all* is the object of *do*. *All* is modified by the subordinate clause, *that may become*, etc. The predicate of the subordinate clause is *may become*; *man* is the direct object. In the second member the subject *he* is understood; it is modified by the subordinate clause, *who dares*, etc., of which *who* is subject and *dare* is predicate. *Dares* is modified by (to) *do*, which is modified by *more*.

187—7. Every phrase and every figure which he uses tends to render the picture more lively and complete.

The nouns of the compound subject, *every phrase and every figure*, are modified by the subordinate clause, *which he uses*. *To render lively* and (to render) *complete* are modifiers of *tends*. *Lively* and *complete* are factitive adjectives, referring to *picture*. *More* modifies both *lively* and *complete*.

187—8. Not every one that saith unto me, Lord! Lord! shall enter into the kingdom of heaven.

One is the subject of the main clause. It is modified by *every* and the subordinate clause, *that saith*, etc. *Every* is modified by *not*. *Lord* and *Lord* are direct objects of *saith*.

187—9. If your arguments produce no conviction, they are worth nothing to men.

Are worth is the predicate of the main clause. *Worth* is modified by the phrase (x) *nothing*, a preposition being understood before *nothing*. *Are* is modified by the subordinate clause, *if your arguments*, etc.

187—10. Honor and shame from no condition rise;
Act well your part, there all the honor lies.

Honor and shame is the compound subject of the first member. Of the second member the subject is understood in the main clause. The connective of the subordinate is *for* understood; thus, *For all the honor lies there*.

191—1. Thou art, O God, the life and light
Of all this wondrous world we see.

Life and light form a compound attribute, and both words are modified by the phrase *of world*. The subordinate clause, *we see* (which), modifies *world*.

191—2. Yes, child of suffering, thou may'st well be sure
He who ordained the Sabbath loves the poor.

Yes is an independent adverb. *Child of suffering* is also independent in construction. *May'st be sure* is the predicate, of which *sure* is an attribute, modified by the subordinate clause, *He who ordained*, etc. *Poor* is used here as a noun.

191—3. My son, if sinners entice thee, consent thou not.

Thou is the subject ; *consent* is the predicate, modified by *not* and by the subordinate clause, *If sinners entice thee*.

191—4. Though the mills of God grind slowly, yet they grind exceeding small ;
Though with patience He stands waiting, with exactness grinds He all.

They is the subject of the first member. *Grind small* is the predicate, in which *small* is a factitive, referring to an object understood. *Exceeding* is an adverb, modifying *small*. *Yet—though* are correlatives, introducing the subordinate clause. In the second member *grinds*, the predicate, is modified by the subordinate clause, *though with patience*, etc. *Stands waiting* is equivalent to *is waiting*, in which *waiting* is a participial attribute.

191.—5. Our very hopes belied our fears,
Our fears our hopes belied ;
We thought her dying when she slept,
And sleeping when she died.

Very modifies *hopes*. *Belied*, the predicate, is modified by *fears*. In the second member *belied* is modified by *hopes*. *Dying* is a participle, modifying *her*, and *sleeping* is a participle, modifying *her* understood.

191—6. This above all, to thine own self be true,
And it must follow, as the night the day,
Thou canst not then be false to any man.

The subject and the predicate of the main clause are

both understood. The predicate is probably *observe* or *remember*. Thus, *Remember this above all*, etc. The predicate verb is modified by the direct object *this* and by the phrase *above all*. *This*, used as an adjective pronoun, is modified by the clause *to thine own self*, etc., of which the subject is understood; *be true* is the predicate, modified by *to self*; *self* is modified by *thine* and *own*. The first subordinate clause is connected with the second by *and*. In the second clause, *it* is the subject, modified by the explanatory clause, *thou canst not then be false*. *Canst be false* is the predicate, *false* being the attribute. *Must follow*, the predicate, is modified by the subordinate clause, *as the night (follows) the day*.

191—7. These are thy glorious works, Parent of good,
Almighty! Thine this universal frame.

Parent of good is independent. *Almighty* also is independent. In the second member *frame* is the subject, and (is) *Thine*, the predicate.

191—8. Thine is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory.
Thine is the subject; the compound attribute is *kingdom, power, and glory*.

191—9. All mine are thine, and thine are mine.

Mine is the subject of the first member; it is modified by *all*. *Are thine* is the predicate, of which *thine* is the attribute, in the nominative after the verb. In the second member *thine* and *mine* are both in the nominative, the former as subject and the latter as attribute.

191—10. Alas! they had been friends in youth,
But whispering tongues can poison truth;
And constancy lives in realms above,
And life is thorny, and youth is vain;
And to be wroth with one we love
Doth work like madness on the brain.

Had been friends is the predicate of the first member,

friends being the attribute. In the third member *above* is an adjective, modifying *realms*. In the sixth member *to be wroth* is the subject, *wroth* being modified by *with one*, and *one* being modified by the clause, (whom) *we love*. *Doth work*, the predicate, is modified by the subordinate clause *like madness* (works), in which *like* is a conjunctive adverb, and *works*, the predicate, is understood.

194—1. In this world it is not what we take up, but what we give up, that makes us rich.

In the first member *it* is the subject; it is modified by the explanatory clause *that makes us rich*, of which *makes rich* is the predicate, *rich* being a factitive adjective. *In this world* modifies *take up* and *give up*. *Is* is modified by *not*. *What*, the attribute, has a double construction; it is in the nominative after *is* and in the objective after *take up*. In the second member *it is* is understood; thus, (It is) *what we give up*, in which *what* again has a double construction, being in the nominative after *is*, and in the objective after *give up*.

194—2. Men are what their mothers made them.

NOTE.—See page 31 for the analysis of this sentence.

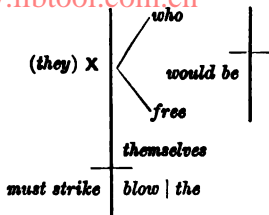
195—4. He's true to God who's true to man.

Who is true to man modifies the subject *he*.

195—5. The best part of our knowledge is that which teaches us where knowledge leaves off and ignorance begins.

The predicate of the main clause is *is that*. *That* is modified by all that follows. *Us* is the indirect object (to *us*) of *teaches*. The direct objects of *teaches* are *knowledge leaves off where* and *ignorance begins where*; *leaves off*, a complex verb, and *begins*, being the predicates.

195—6. Who would be free, themselves must strike the blow.
 The subject of this sentence is *they* understood; the analysis may be indicated as follows:



Themselves is in apposition with the subject understood.

195—7. There is, however, a limit at which forbearance ceases to be a virtue.

Limit is the subject; the predicate is *is*; *there* is an independent adverb. The subject is modified by the subordinate clause, *at which*, etc. *However* modifies *is*.

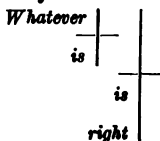
195—8. We should count time by heart-throbs; he most lives
 Who thinks most, feels the noblest, acts the best.

In the second member *he*, the subject, is modified by the three clauses *who thinks most*, (who) *feels the noblest*, (who) *acts the best*. In the second of these the predicate is *feels noblest*, *feels* being equivalent to a neuter verb. *Lives*, the predicate of the main clause, is modified by *most*, an adverb.

195—9. What in me is dark,
 Illumine; what is low, raise and support.

195—10. Whatever is, is right.

NOTE.—See page 31 for the written analysis of both these sentences. Sentence 10 may also be diagrammed as follows:



195—11. I hope I shall always possess firmness and virtue enough to maintain what I consider the most enviable of all titles, the character of an honest man.

All that follows *hope* in the sentence is the direct object. *Enough* modifies *firmness* and *virtue*; *to maintain* modifies *enough*, and *to maintain* is modified by what follows, as a direct object. *Consider* is modified by *what* and *to be (title)*, *title* understood being modified by *the, most enviable*, and *of all titles*. *Character* is in apposition with the antecedent part of *what*.

195—13. What a rare gift, by the by, is that of manners!

Gift is the subject, modified by *what, a, and rare*. *Is*, the copula, is modified by the complex adverb, *by the by; that*, the attribute, is modified by *of manners*.

195—14. It is what we ourselves have done, and not what others have done for us, that we shall be remembered by in after ages.

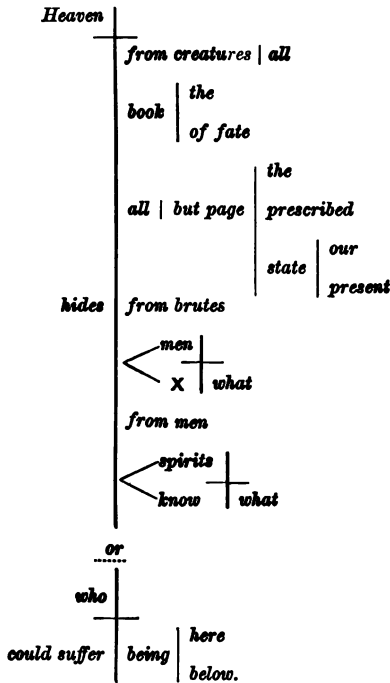
It, the subject, is modified by the explanatory clause, *that we shall be remembered by, etc*. *Remembered* is modified by the phrase *by that*. The predicate of the first member is *is what*. *Ourselves* is in apposition with the subject *we*. In the second member both the subject *it* and copula *is* are understood. *Not* modifies *is* understood.

195—15. Heaven from all creatures hides the book of fate,
 All but the page prescribed, their present state;
 From brutes what men, from men what spirits
 know;
 Or who could suffer being here below?

Hides, the predicate, is modified by the phrase *from all creatures*; by the direct object *book*; by *all, etc.*; by the phrase *from brutes*; by the clause *what men know*; by the phrase *from men*; and by the clause *what spirits know*. In the second line *all* is modified by the phrase *but the*

page, *page* being modified by the participle *prescribed*, and by the noun *state* in apposition. The two subordinate clauses in their natural order read, *men know what* and *spirits know what*. In the last member, *could suffer*, the predicate, is modified by *being*, and *being* is modified by *here* and *below*.

NOTE.—The full diagram is given below.



199—1. To live in hearts we leave behind
Is not to die.

To live is the subject. In the subordinate clause, *behind*, an adverb, modifies *leave*. *Is to die* is the predicate, *to die* being the attribute. *Not* modifies *to die*.

199—2. Language is the amber in which a thousand precious thoughts have been safely imbedded and preserved.

Is amber is the predicate of the main clause; it is modified by all that follows. *Thoughts* is the subject of the subordinate clause, and is modified by *a thousand* and *precious*. The predicate of the subordinate clause is *have been imbedded and preserved*.

200—3. To find some sure interpreter
My spirit vainly tries;
I only know that God is love,
And know that love is wise.

Spirit is the subject; *tries* is the predicate, modified by *vainly* and *to find*. In the third line, *know* is modified by *only* and by the clause *that God is love*. In the fourth line, *know* is modified by the clause *that love is wise*.

200—4. The flowers fade, the heart withers, man grows old and dies, the world lies down in the sepulchre of ages; but Time writes no wrinkles on the brow of Eternity.

In the third member, *grows old*, equivalent to *becomes old*, is the predicate. In the last member, *on brow* modifies *writes*.

200—5. If God send thee a cross, take it up willingly and follow Him.

The subject of the main clause is understood. *Take up and follow* is the compound predicate, modified by the clause, *If God send*, etc.

200—6. Heaven is not gained at a single bound;
But we build the ladder by which we rise
From the lowly earth to the vaulted skies,
And we mount to its summit round by round.

Not modifies the phrase *at bound*. *Rise* is modified by the phrases *by which*, *from earth*, and *to skies*. *Mount* is modified by the phrase *to summit*, and by the phrase (with) *round*. This phrase is probably modified by the word

followed when the ellipsis is supplied, which in turn is modified by the second phrase, *by round*.

200—7. Dare to be true; nothing can need a lie;
A fault which needs it most grows two thereby.

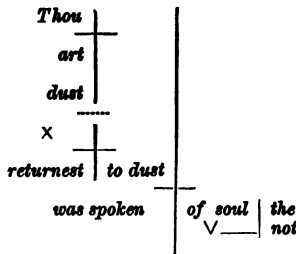
The subject is understood in the first member. *Dare* is the predicate, modified by *to be true*, in which *true* is an abstract adjective. In the last clause, *grows two* is equivalent to *becomes two*. The predicate is *grows two*, of which *two* is the attribute. *Thereby* modifies *grows*.

200—8. Worth makes the man, and the want of it the fellow.

In the second member the word *makes* is understood after *it*.

200—9. Life is real! life is earnest!
And the grave is not the goal;
"Dust thou art, to dust returnest,"
Was not spoken of the soul.

The last half of the selection may be diagrammed as follows :



200—10. There are moments, I think, when the spirit receives

Whole volumes of thought on its unwritten leaves.

Think is the predicate. It is modified by the subordinate clause, *There are moments when the spirit*, etc. *There* is an independent adverb. *Moments* is modified by the

explanatory clause that follows the word *think*, of which *spirits* is the subject and *receives* is the predicate. *When* is a relative adverb equivalent to *in which*.

www.libtool.com.cn

200—11. Mont Blanc is the monarch of mountains ;
 They crowned him long ago—
 On a throne of rocks, in a robe of clouds,
 With a diadem of snow.

In the second member, *crowned* is the predicate. *Long* modifies *ago*, and *ago* modifies *crowned*.

203—1. What a tangled web we weave
 When first we practise to deceive !

The predicate is *weave*, modified by *web*, which is modified by *what*, *a*, and *tangled*. *Weave* is modified also by the subordinate clause, *When first*, etc. *When* is the connective. *Practise* is modified by *first* and *to deceive*.

203—2. The Son of man is come to seek and to save that which is lost.

Is come, the predicate, is equivalent to *has come*. It is modified by the infinitives *to seek* and *to save*, which are both modified by the objective *that*. *That* is modified by the adjective clause, *which is lost*.

203—3. His hands refuse to labor.

To labor is in the objective after *refuse*.

204—4. When thou doest alms, let not thy left hand know what thy right hand doeth.

The subject of the main clause is understood. *Let* is the predicate ; *not* modifies *let* ; *hand* is the direct object of *let*. *Let* is modified also by (to) *know*, which is modified by the clause, *thy right hand doeth what*. *Let* is modified also by the subordinate clause, *When thou doest alms*.

204—5. Give me liberty to know, to think, to believe, and to utter freely, according to conscience, above all other liberties.

Give, the predicate, is modified by (to) *me*, also by *liberty* and by the phrase *above liberties*. *Liberty* is modified by the four infinitives *to know*, *to think*, *to believe*, and *to utter*. *To utter* is modified by the phrase, *according to conscience*, in which *according to* is a complex preposition.

204—6. "Ah," cried the streamlet, "this is a heavenly light sent to tell me what I wish to know, and to guide my course."

Cried is the predicate, modified by the clause that follows the word *streamlet*. *Ah* is an interjection. *Sent* modifies *light*, and is in turn modified by *to tell* and *to guide*. *To tell* is modified by the phrase (to) *me* and by the subordinate clause, *I wish to know what*.

204—7. Delightful task! to rear the tender thought,
To teach the young idea how to shoot!

This is not a sentence. Both infinitive phrases modify *task*, being in apposition with it. *To shoot* modifies *to teach*.

204—8. Teach me to feel another's woe, to hide the fault I
see;

The mercy¹ I to others show, that mercy² show
to me.

The subject is understood. (To) *me* modifies *teach*. The direct objects are *to feel* and *to hide*. *Fault* is modified by *I see* (which). In the second member *mercy*² is the direct object, modified by the clause, *I show to others*. *Mercy*¹ is in apposition with *mercy*².

204—9. To be or not to be, that is the question.

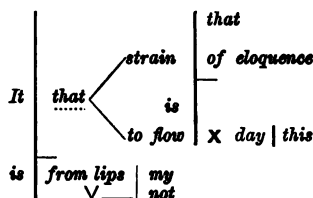
To be or not to be is independent by pleonasm. *That* is the subject, and *is question*, the predicate.

204—10. To reign is worth ambition.

To reign is the subject, and *is worth*, the predicate. *Ambition* is object of a preposition understood.

204—11. It is not from my lips that that strain of eloquence is this day to flow.

See diagram :



204—12. To spend too much time in studies is sloth; to use them too much for ornament is affectation; to make judgment wholly by their rules is the humor of a scholar.

In the first member *much* modifies *time*. In the second member *much* modifies *use*. In the third member *wholly* modifies the phrase *by rules*.

204—13. Read not to contradict and confute, nor to believe and take for granted, nor to find talk and discourse; but to weigh and consider.

The subject of the first member is understood. *Not* modifies *to contradict* and (to) *confute*. The infinitives in the first member all modify *read*. The phrase *for granted* modifies *take*. *Granted* is a participle used as a noun. In the second member, the predicate *read* is modified by *to weigh* and (to) *consider*.

204—14. Thy Hector, wrapt in everlasting sleep,
Shall neither hear thee sigh, nor see thee weep.

Wrapt is a participle, modifying *Hector*. *Shall hear* is modified by *thee*, which is modified by *sigh*. (Shall) *see* is modified by *thee*, which is modified by *weep*. *Neither* and *nor* are correlative conjunctions.

204—15. To err is human—to forgive, divine.

To err is the subject of the first member, *is human* is the predicate. In the second member the copula is understood.

207—1. Life is as tedious as a twice-told tale
Vexing the ears of a drowsy man.

The predicate is *is tedious*. *Tedious* is modified by the subordinate clause introduced by the conjunctive adverb *as*. The subject of the subordinate clause is *tale*; the predicate is understood. *Twice-told* and *vexing* modify *tale*.

207—2. Learning is like a river, whose head, being far in the land, is at first rising little and easily viewed.

Is like is the predicate of the main clause, in which *like* is a predicate adjective followed by the phrase (unto) *a river*. *River* is modified by the subordinate clause, *whose head*, etc. *Being*, a participle, modifies *head*. The phrase *in land* modifies *being*. *Far* modifies the phrase *in land*. *At first rising* modifies *is*. The predicate in the subordinate clause is compound, consisting of *is little* and *is viewed*.

207—3. True politeness is the spirit of benevolence showing itself in a refined way.

Showing, a participle, modifies *spirit*.

207—4. This mournful truth is everywhere confessed :
Slow rises worth by poverty depressed.

Truth is the subject. The second line is a subordinate adjective clause, modifying *truth*. *Worth*, the subject, is modified by the participle *depressed*. *Slow* is an adverb, modifying *rises*.

207—5. When a man has not a good reason for doing a thing, he has a good reason for letting it alone.

Of the main clause *he* is the subject, and *has*, the predicate. *Reason* is the direct object of *has*; it is modified by the phrase *for letting alone*, *alone* being a factitive adjective. In the subordinate clause *has* is the predicate, modified by *not* and *reason*. *Reason* is modified by *a*, *good*, and the phrase *for doing*, *doing* being used as a participial noun after *for*.

207—6. Many a word at random spoken

May soothe or wound a heart that's broken.

Many a, a complex adjective, modifies *word*. *Spoken*, a participle, modifies *word*. The predicate of the main clause is compound, consisting of the two predicates, *may soothe* and (may) *wound*. *Heart* is the direct object of the predicate, and is modified by the clause, *that is broken*.

207—7. Of all the myriad moods of mind

That through the soul come thronging,

What one was e'er so dear, so kind,

So beautiful, as longing!

Of the main clause *one* is the subject. It is modified by *what* and *of moods*. The clause, *that come thronging*, etc., modifies *moods*. *Come thronging*, equivalent to *are thronging*, is the predicate of this clause. The attribute of the chief predicate consists of three simple attributes, *dear*, *kind*, and *beautiful*, modified by the subordinate clause *as longing* (is).

207—8. I have no more pleasure in hearing a man attempting wit and failing than in seeing a man trying to leap over a ditch and tumbling into it.

In hearing modifies *have*; *man* is the direct object of *hearing*; *attempting* and *failing* are both participles,

modifying *man*. *More* is modified by the subordinate clause, *than (I have) in seeing a man*, etc., in which both subject and predicate are understood. *Seeing* is used as a participial noun after *in*. *Man* is the direct object after *seeing*. *Trying* and *tumbling* modify *man*. *To leap* is the direct object of *trying*.

207—9. A vile conceit in pompous words expressed
Is like a clown in regal purple dressed.

Conceit is modified by *expressed*, a participle. *Is like* is the predicate, *like* being an adjective, modified by (unto) *clown*. *Dressed* is a participle, modifying *clown*.

207—10. The heights by great men gained and kept
Were not attained by sudden flight.

Heights, the subject, is modified by the participles *gained* and *kept*. The phrase *by flight* modifies *were attained*. *Not* modifies the phrase *by flight*.

207—11. The stoical scheme of supplying our wants by lopping off our desires is like cutting off our feet when we want shoes.

Scheme, the subject, is modified by the phrase *of supplying*; *supplying* is modified by the phrase *by lopping off*, of which *lopping off* is a complex participle used as a noun. *Is like* is the predicate, *like* being modified by the phrase (unto) *cutting off*, of which *cutting off* is a complex participle used as a noun.

211—1. Man wants but little here below,
Nor wants that little long.

The predicate in this sentence is compound. The first word *wants* is modified by *little*, *here* and *below*; *but* is an adverb modifying *little* in its adjective sense. The second *wants* is modified by the direct object *little* and by the adverb *long*.

211—2. 'Tis not¹ in folly not² to scorn a fool;
And scarce in human wisdom to do more.

The explanatory clause, *to scorn*, etc. modifies *it*, the subject. The second word *not* modifies *to scorn*. The predicate *is* is modified by the phrase *in folly*. *Not¹* modifies *in folly*. Of the second member, *to do* is the subject, modified by *more*. The predicate *is* is understood, and it is modified by *in wisdom*.

211—3. How sleep the brave who sink to rest
By all their country's wishes blessed!

Brave, the subject, is modified by the participle *blessed*. *All* modifies *country's*.

211—4. It is well to think well ; it is divine to act well.

To think well modifies the subject *it*. *Is well* is the predicate. *To act well* modifies the subject *it*, of the second member.

211—5. Generally, also, a downright fact may be told in a plain way.

Generally, *also*, and *in way* modify *may be told*, as adverbial elements.

211—6. Peradventure he is asleep, and must be awakened.

Peradventure is an adverb, modifying *is*.

211—7. Loveliest of lovely things are they
On earth that soonest pass away.

The subject *they* is modified by the subordinate clause. *Are loveliest* is the predicate.

211—9. There is no flock, however watched and tended,
But one dead lamb is there.

There is an independent adverb. *Watched* and *tended*, participles, modify *flock*. *But* is a subordinate conjunction.

212—10. There beamed a smile
 So fixed, so holy, from that cherub brow,
 Death gazed, and left it there.

There is an independent adverb. *Fixed* modifies *smile*; *so* modifies *fixed*. The subordinate clause, *Death gazed*, modifies *so*. The connective *that* is understood. *There*, the last word, modifies *left*.

212—11. Vice is a monster of so frightful mien,
 As, to be hated, needs but to be seen;
 But seen too oft, familiar with her face,
 We first endure, then pity, then embrace.

As to be hated, etc. modifies *so*. *It* understood is the subject of this subordinate clause, and *needs* is the predicate. *To be seen* is the direct object of *needs*, and *to be hated* modify *needs* adverbially. The second couplet is equivalent to *we* (having) *seen*, etc. *Having seen* modifies *we*, the subject. (*Being*) *familiar* also modifies *we*. *Endure*, *pity*, and *embrace* form the compound predicate of the second couplet.

212—12. No man can safely command that has not truly
 learned to obey.

The subordinate clause modifies *man*.

212—13. A true good man there was there of religion,
 Pious and poor, the parson of the town.

The first *there* is an independent adverb; the second modifies *was*. *Parson* is in apposition with *man*.

212—14. The stronger the mind the greater its ambition.

Ambition is the subject of the main clause; (is) *greater* is the predicate. *Greater* is modified by the adverb *the*, and by the subordinate clause *the mind* (is) *the stronger*. The second *the* is an adverb modifying *stronger*.

215—1. He that goes¹ a-borrowing goes² a-sorrowing.

*Goes*¹ is modified by the phrase *at borrowing*, and *goes*² by the phrase *at sorrowing* a = *at* being a preposition.

SANTA CLARA COUNTY
 TEACHERS' LIBRARY

215—2. From peak to peak, the rattling crags among, leaps the live thunder.

Leaps is modified by *from peak, to peak* and *among crags*. www.libtool.com.cn

215—3. Oh for a lodge in some vast wilderness !
Subject and predicate (*I long*) are omitted.

215—4. As the mountains are round about Jerusalem, so the Lord is round about his people.

About people modifies *is*; *round* modifies the phrase *about people*. *So* and *as* are correlatives, introducing the subordinate clause, in which *round* modifies *about Jerusalem*, which phrase modifies *are*. The first clause is subordinate; the second, principal.

215—5. The quality of mercy is not strained;
It droppeth as the gentle rain from heaven,
Upon the place beneath.

In the second member, *as the gentle rain from heaven* (droppeth) modifies *droppeth*. *Upon the place beneath* also modifies *droppeth*. *Beneath* modifies *place*.

215—6. I hold, in truth, with him who sings
To one clear harp in divers tones,
That men may rise on stepping-stones
Of their dead selves to higher things.

In truth modifies *hold*. The subordinate clause also modifies *hold*.

216—7. An effort made for the happiness of others lifts us above ourselves.

Effort, the subject, is modified by *made*, a participle.

216—8. By ceaseless action all that is subsists.

All, the subject, is modified by the subordinate clause, *that is*.

216—9. E'en the oak thrives by the rude concussion of the storm.

E'en modifies *thrives*. According to some authorities,

it may be called an emphatic adverb, modifying the whole sentence.

216—10. And I have made a pilgrimage from far.

And is an introductory conjunction. *Far* is here used as a noun.

216—11. At midnight, in his guarded tent,
 The Turk was dreaming of the hour
 When Greece, her knee in suppliance bent,
 Should tremble at his power.

Was dreaming, the predicate of the main clause, is modified by *at midnight*, *in tent*, and *of hour*. *Hour* is modified by the subordinate clause, *When Greece*, etc. *Greece* is modified by the phrase (with) *knee*, and *knee* is modified by *bent*. *When* modifies *should tremble*.

216—12. Ishmael's wandering race, that rode
 On camels o'er the spicy tract that lay
 From Persia to the Red Sea coast.

This is not a sentence. *Race* is modified by all that follows. *To coast* modifies *lay*.

216—13. How dear to my heart are the scenes of my childhood,
 When fond recollection presents them to view!

Are dear is the predicate of the main clause. The subordinate clause modifies *are*.

216—14. I bring fresh showers for the thirsty flowers
 From the sea and the stream.

For flowers modifies *bring*. *From sea and stream* also modifies *bring*.

216—15. Oh, my love's like the melody
 That's sweetly played in tune.

In the main clause the predicate is *is like*. *Like* is modified by (unto) *melody*. *Melody* is modified by the subordinate clause, *That's sweetly played*.

219—1. Beautiful and salutary as a religious influence is the sound of a distant Sabbath-bell in the country.

The predicate has a compound attribute *beautiful and salutary*. *As* and *as* are correlatives. *Is*, the predicate of the subordinate clause, is understood. (Influence *is*.)

219—2. Young heads are giddy, and young hearts are warm,
And make mistakes for manhood to reform.

Heads or *they* understood is the subject of *make*. *To reform* modifies *make*. *Manhood* is the object of a preposition understood. *For to* is the sign of the infinitive. *For to reform* is the full infinitive.

219—3. That you have wronged me doth appear in this.

That you have wronged is the subject of the main clause.

219—4. I am debtor both to the Greeks and to the Barbarians, both to the wise and to the unwise.

Both—and are correlatives.

219—5. 'Tis midnight's holy hour, and silence now
Is brooding like a gentle spirit o'er
The still and pulseless world.

Is brooding is the predicate of the second member. *Like a gentle spirit* (broods) modifies *is brooding*, *like* being a conjunctive adverb.

219—6. Human beings are composed not of reason only, but of imagination also, and sentiments, and that is neither wasted nor misapplied which is appropriated to the purpose of giving right direction to sentiments and opening proper springs of feeling in the heart.

Not only—but also are correlatives. *That* is modified by the clause beginning *which is appropriated*, etc. *Purpose* is modified by *of giving* and (of) *opening*. *To sentiments* modifies *giving*; *in the heart* modifies *opening*.

220—7. We recognize books by their bindings, though the true and essential characteristics lie inside.

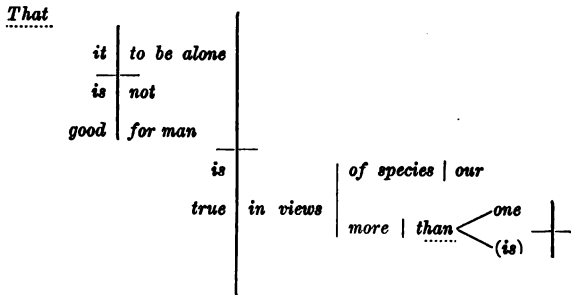
The subordinate clause, *though*, etc., modifies *recognize*.

220—8. Order is Heaven's first law, and this confessed,
 Some are, and must be, wiser than the rest,
 More rich, more wise; but who infers from hence
 That such are happier, shocks all common sense.

In the second member, *this confessed* is independent. The second line is equivalent to *Some are (wiser), and (they) must be wiser than the rest (are wise)*. The clause, *than the rest, etc.*, seems to modify the attribute in each clause. The next two members are equivalent to *(some are) more rich, (some are) more wise*. *Who infers, etc.* modifies *he* understood. *From hence* modifies *infers*, *hence* being used here as a noun. *Infers* is modified also by the clause, *that such are happier*, in which *such* is used as a noun.

220—9. That it is not good for man to be alone is true in more views of our species than one; and society gives strength to our reason as well as polish to our manners.

The first part may be diagrammed as follows :



As well as is a complex conjunction.

220—10. And I have loved thee, Ocean!

And is an introductory conjunction. *Ocean* is independent.

221—2. Ah! who can tell how hard it is to climb

The steep where Fame's proud temples shine afar!

Can tell, the predicate of the main clause, is modified

by the subordinate clause, of which *it* is the subject, and *is hard* the predicate. *To climb*, etc. modifies *it*. *Steep* is modified by the subordinate clause, *where Fame's*, etc., of which *temples* is the subject. *Afar* modifies *shine*.

221—3. Oh that men should put an enemy into their mouths to steal away their brains!

The subject and the predicate of this sentence are understood. The sentence is probably equivalent to *Oh* (it is lamentable), etc., in which all that follows *Oh* modifies *it*, the subject, as an explanatory clause. *To steal* modifies *put*.

221—4. Oh for a world in principle as chaste as this is gross and selfish!

This is equivalent to *Oh* (I long) *for*, etc. *In principle* modifies *chaste*.

221—5. Oh for that warning voice!

Subject and predicate, probably *I wish*, are both understood.

221—6. What! this a sleeve? 'tis like a demi-cannon.

In the first member the copula *is* is omitted. *What* is an interjection. In the second member *is like* is the predicate, *like* being modified by (unto) *demi-cannon*.

221—7. Heigh-ho!¹ sing heigh-ho!² unto the green holly:
Most friendship is feigning, most loving is folly.

*Heigh-ho*¹ is an interjection. *Thou* or *you* understood is the subject. The second word *heigh-ho* is a noun, 'he object of *sing*.

GENERAL EXERCISES.

228—1. "You are a tyrant," he answered with a sigh.

He is the subject, and *answered* is the predicate of the main clause. The direct object of *answered* is, "*You are a tyrant.*"

228—2. "Stop!" said the driver, in a tone of anger.

This, expanded, is, *The driver, in a tone of anger, said, "Do thou stop,"* the latter clause being the object of *said*.

228—3. "I do not mean," said the antiquary, "to intrude upon your lordship."

All in quotation-marks is the direct object of *said*.

228—4. "A bird in the hand," says the old proverb, "is worth two in the bush."

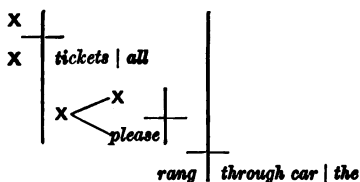
NOTE.—See page 34 for the diagram of this sentence.

228—5. So great was the demand for paper that the sovereigns of some countries, where the plant out of which it was made flourished, monopolized entirely its culture.

So modifies *great*. The clause, *that the sovereigns, etc.*, modifies *so*. *Countries* is modified by *some*, and by the clause, *where the plant flourished*. *It was made out of which* modifies *plant*.

229—6. "All tickets, please," rang through the car.

This is equivalent to *show all tickets, if you please*. The analysis may be indicated as follows:



229—7. I live as I did, I think as I did, I love you as I did.

Each of the clauses *as I did* modifies the verb preceding the clause.

229—8. Deliver us from the nauseous repetition of *as* and *so*, which some *so-so* writers, if I may call them *so*, are continually sounding in our ears.

Of as and so is an adjective phrase, modifying *repeti-*

tion, *as* and *so* being here used as nouns. *So-so*, an adjective, modifies *writers*. The clause, *if I may call them so*, modifies *are sounding*. *So* in the second line is an adjective pronoun modifying *them*, being in apposition with that word.

229—9. Pausing a while, thus to herself she mused.
Pausing modifies *she*; *thus* modifies *mused*.

229—10. Oh that those lips had language!
After *Oh*, “I wish” is probably understood.

229—11. There is no man that sinneth not.
There is an independent adverb.

229—12. See the blind beggar dance, the cripple sing,
The sot a hero, lunatic a king.
(To) *dance* modifies *beggar*; (to) *sing* modifies *cripple*; (to be) *hero* modifies *sot*; and (to be) *king* modifies *lunatic*.

229—13. From liberty each nobler science sprung,
A Bacon brightened, and a Spenser sung.
Brightened is modified by the phrase *from liberty*, as is also *sung*.

229—14. The why is plain as way to parish church.
Why, used as a noun, is the subject of the main clause. The second clause is equivalent to *as (the) way to parish church (is plain)*.

229—15. A dainty plant is the ivy green,
That creepeth o'er ruins old,
Of right choice food are his meals, I ween,
In his cell so lone and cold.
The walls must be crumbled, the stones decayed,
To pleasure his dainty whim,
And the mouldering dust that years have made
Is a merry meal for him.

In the second half of this selection *crumbled* and

decayed are adjectives. *To pleasure* modifies both *crumbled* and *decayed*. *That* is in the objective after *have made*.

www.libtool.com.cn

- 229—16. Close beside her, faintly moaning,
 Fair and young a soldier lay,
 Torn with shot and pierced with lances,
 Bleeding slow his life away.

Close modifies the phrase *beside her*. *Moaning*, *torn*, *pierced*, and *bleeding away* are participles modifying *soldier*. *Slow*, an adverb, modifies *bleeding away*, a complex participle. *Beside her* modifies *lay*.

- 229—17. Down came the tree, nest, eagles, and all.

Tree is modified by (with) *nest*, (with) *eagles*, and (with) *all*.

- 229—18. His heart went¹ pit-a-pat,
 But hers went² pity Zekle.

Pit-a-pat is an adverb, modifying *went*.¹ *Hers* is the subject of the second member. The adverbial modifier of *went*² is (I) *pity Zekle*.

- 229—19. Laugh those who can, weep those who may.

The subject of each member is understood. The predicate in each member is *let* understood. In the first member the probable meaning is (Let) *those laugh who can* (laugh); (to) *laugh*, the infinitive, modifying *let* understood. In the second member the meaning is (Let) *those weep who may* (weep); the infinitive (to) *weep* modifying *let* understood.

- 229—20. Now they wax and now they dwindle,
 Whirling with the whirling spindle;
 Twist ye, turn ye! Even so
 Mingle human bliss and woe.

They, the subject, is modified by *whirling*. *Now* modi-

fies *wax*. *Ye* is the subject of the third member, and *twist* is the predicate. *Bliss* and *woe* form the compound subject of the fifth member. *So* modifies *mingle*, and *even* modifies *so*.

229—21. The piper loud and louder blew,
The dancers quick and quicker flew.

Loud and *louder* are adverbs modifying *blew*. *Quick* and *quicker* are adverbs modifying *flew*.

NOTE.—Sentences 22 and 23 have been disposed of on page 86.

230—24. Hands that the rod of empire might have swayed
Close at my elbow stir the lemonade.

Might have swayed is modified by *rod of empire*. *At elbow* modifies *stir*, and *close* modifies the phrase *at elbow*.

230—25. Can storied urn or animated bust
Back to its mansion call the fleeting breath?
Can Honor's voice provoke the silent dust,
Or Flattery soothe the dull, cold ear of death?

The subject is compound. *Can call* is the predicate. *Back* modifies *can call*, adverbially. In the second member *can provoke* is the predicate. In the third member (can) *soothe* is the predicate.

230—26. Away they went, pell-mell, hurry-skurry, wild buffalo, wild horse, wild huntsman, with clang and clatter and whoop and halloo that made the forest ring.

They is the subject, modified by the nouns in apposition, *buffalo*, *horse*, and *huntsman*. The predicate *went* is modified by the adverbs *pell-mell*, *hurry-skurry*, and by the phrases *with clang*, (with) *clatter*, (with) *whoop*, and (with) *halloo*. The clause, *that made the forest ring*, modifies the nouns *clang*, *clatter*, *whoop*, and *halloo*. In the predicate of the subordinate clause, *made* (to) *ring*, the infinitive (to) *ring* is factitive,

230—27. This is the message that ye heard from the beginning, that we should love one another.

This, the subject, is modified by the explanatory clause, *that we should love*, etc. *Message* is modified by the clause, *that ye heard from the beginning*, in which *that* is the object of *heard*. *One* is in apposition with *we*.

230—28. Whatever is read differs from what is repeated.

The subordinate clause, *Whatever is read*, is the subject of the main clause. The object of *from* is the clause, *what is repeated*.

230—29. What ho! thou genius of the clime, what ho!

What ho! what ho! are interjections.

230—30. Mark what it is his mind aims at in this question, and not what words he expresses.

Mark is the predicate of the main clause in the first member. The object is all that follows, including the word *question*. In the subordinate clause *it* is the subject, modified by the explanatory clause, *the mind aims at (x) in this question*. *Is what* is the predicate, in which *what* has a double construction. In the second member the subject *you* and the predicate *mark* are both understood. The object is the clause following *and*. *Words* modifies *expresses*. *What* modifies *words*.

230—31. In singing, as in piping, you excel.

This means, *You excel in singing as (you excel) in piping*.

230—32. There brighter suns dispense serener light,
And milder moons imparadise the night.

Dispense, the predicate, is modified by the adverb *there* and by the direct object *light*.

230—33. The beautiful strikes us as much by its novelty as the deformed itself.

Beautiful is used as a noun. *As much as* is a complex conjunction introducing the subordinate clause, in which *deformed*, an adjective, used as a noun, is the subject. *Itself* is in apposition with the noun *deformed*. The predicate of the subordinate clause is *strikes* or *does* understood.

SENTENCES

FROM

HARVEY'S ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

53—17. NONE think the great¹ unhappy but the great.²

*But great*² = *except great*, modifies *none*. *Unhappy* is an adjective, referring to *great*. It is used factitively after *think*.

53—18. Our birth is but a sleep and a forgetting.

But is an adverb, modifying *is*.

53—19. To make a long story short, the company broke up and returned to the more important concerns of the election.

To make short, etc. is independent, *short* being a factitive adjective, referring to *story*. *Broke up* is a complex verb.

54—21. For nine long years, session after session, we have been lashed round and round this miserable circle of occasional arguments and miserable expedients.

Have been lashed is modified by *round and round circle*; also by *for years*; also by (during) *session*.

54—22. Dim with the mist of years, gray flits the shade of power.

Flits gray is equivalent to *is gray*, *gray* being a predicate adjective.

54—23. Can storied urn or animated bust
Back to its mansion call the fleeting breath?

Back is an adverb, modifying *call*.

54—24. With secret course, which no loud storms annoy,
Glides the smooth current of domestic joy.

Course is modified by the clause, *which no loud*, etc.
Current is the subject of the main clause, and *glides*,
the predicate.

54—26. With many a weary step, and many a groan,
Up the high hill he heaves a huge round stone.

Many a is a complex adjective, modifying the noun
following.

62—5. You, yourself, told me so.

Yourself is in apposition with *you*.

62—10. For we dare not make ourselves of the number, or
compare ourselves with some that commend themselves; but
they, measuring themselves by themselves, and comparing them-
selves among themselves, are not wise.

Make is in the infinitive mode, modifying *dare*, as is
also (to) *compare*. *Measuring* and *comparing* are parti-
ciples, modifying *they*.

62—11. My country, 'tis of thee,
Sweet land of liberty,
Of thee, I sing.

My country, sweet land of liberty, is independent in
construction. *It* is the subject, modified by the clause
(that) *I sing*. The predicate is *is of thee*, of which *of
thee* is a phrase attribute.

62—12. Thou great Instructor, lest I stray
Teach thou my erring feet thy way.

Thou great Instructor is independent. (To) *feet* is
the indirect, and *way*, the direct object of *teach*. *Lest I
stray*, a subordinate clause, modifies *teach*.

64—1. The farm is neither his nor theirs.

His and *theirs* are in the nominative after *is*. They have the possessive form, but their use determines their case.

64—2. Is that horse of yours lame yet?

Yours is in the objective after the preposition *of*.

64—3. I did not hear that lecture of yours last evening.

Yours is in the objective after the preposition *of*. *Evening* is in the objective after a preposition understood.

64—4. He is an old friend of ours.

Ours is in the objective after the preposition *of*.

64—5. This book is not mine; it must be his or hers.

Mine is in the nominative after *is*; *his* and *hers* are in the nominative after *must be*.

64—6. That carriage of theirs is a very fine one.

Theirs is in the objective after *of*.

64—7. Friend of mine, why so sad?

Mine is in the objective after *of*.

68—3. They that forsake the law, praise the wicked; but such as keep the law, contend with them.

Such is an adjective pronoun, subject of *contend*. *As* is given by some as a relative pronoun after *such*. It may also indicate an ellipsis (such as those are who keep, etc.).

68—4. There is no class of persons that I dislike so much as those who slander their neighbors.

As is a conjunctive adverb, connecting with the main clause the subordinate, *as* (I dislike) *those*, etc. *Those* is an adjective pronoun, in the objective after *dislike* understood.

69—6. Whatever is, is right.

NOTE.—See page 31 for this sentence ; also page 99.

69—7. Whatsoever ye ask in my name, that will I do.

Whatsoever is in the objective after *shall ask*.

69—8. He will do what is right.

What has a double construction. It is in the objective after *will do*, and is subject of *is right*.

69—9. This is the dog that¹ worried the cat that² killed the rat that³ ate the malt that⁴ lay in the house that⁵ Jack built.

*That*¹ is in the nominative to *worried*. *That*² is in the nominative to *killed*. *That*³ is in the nominative to *ate*. *That*⁴ is in the nominative to *lay*. *That*⁵ is in the objective after *built*.

69—10. A kind boy avoids doing whatever injures others.

Whatever has a double construction ; it is in the objective after *doing*, and in the nominative to *injures*.

70—6. Whom do you take me to be?

Whom, following to *be*, is in the same case, the objective, as *me* preceding.

70—8. What can be more beautiful than that landscape?

Landscape is in the nominative to *is* understood.

70—10. Who told you how to parse "what"?

"*What*" is here a noun, in the objective after *parse*.

70—1. Who is in the garden?—My father.

Father is in the nominative to *is* understood.

70—2. I do not know who is in the garden.

Who is in the garden is the direct object of *know*. *Who*, in such cases, is by some grammarians called a responsive pronoun.

70—3. Tell me what I should do.

What is the direct object of *should do*. *What I should do* is the direct object of *tell*.

70—5. Always seek for what you need the most.

What has a double construction ; it is in the objective after *for* and in the objective after *need*.

71—6. Whose house was burned last night?—Mr. Hubbard's.

Mr. Hubbard's is a complex noun, limiting *house* understood. The expression is equivalent to *Mr. Hubbard's house was burned last night*.

71—7. The boy closed the shutters which darkened the room.

Which is in the nominative to *darkened*. It relates to the whole preceding clause, and may be considered in apposition with the clause.

71—8. What is his name ?

What is in the nominative after *is* (*His name is what* ?).

71—9. Whoever enters here should have a pure heart.

Whoever has a double construction ; it is in the nominative to *enters*, and in the nominative to *should have*.

71—10. I gave all that I had.

That is in the objective after *had*.

71—4. One ounce of gold is worth sixteen ounces of silver.

Worth is a predicate adjective after *is* ; *ounces* is in the objective after a preposition understood.

71—8. Be of the same mind one toward another.

Ye understood is the subject ; *one* is in apposition with *ye*.

71—9. He sacrificed everything he had in the world: what could we ask more?

What is an adjective, modifying *more*. *More* is here used as a noun, in the objective after *asked*.

71—10. Who's here so base that would be a bondman?

Base is an adjective, modifying *who*. *That* is a conjunction, followed by *he* understood. The clause, *that would be*, etc., modifies *so*.

71—11. I speak as to wise men: judge ye what I say.

This sentence is equivalent to *I speak as* (I would speak) *to wise men*. *As* is a conjunctive adverb, and *to* is a preposition. *What* has a double construction; it is in the objective after *judge* and after *say*.

71—12. Liberty was theirs as men¹: without it they did not esteem themselves men².

Theirs is the predicate nominative after *was*. *As* is an introductory conjunction. *Men*¹ is in apposition with *theirs*. In the second member *men*² is in the same case as *themselves* by predication.

71—13. The death of Socrates, peacefully philosophizing with his friends, is the most pleasant that could be desired.

Philosophizing is a participle, modifying *Socrates*. The clause, *that could be desired*, modifies the noun *death* understood.

71—14. O Popular Applause! what heart of man
Is proof against thy sweet, seducing charms?

What is an adjective, modifying *heart*.

71—15. What¹ black, what² ceaseless cares besiege our state!
What strokes we feel from fancy and from fate!

*What*¹ and *what*² are adjectives, modifying *cares*. *What* in the second line is an adjective, modifying *strokes*, which is a noun in the objective after *feel*.

- 71—16. Unveil thy bosom, faithful tomb ;
 Take this new treasure to thy trust,
 And give these sacred relics room
 To slumber in the silent dust.

Relics is a noun in the objective after a preposition understood ; *room* is the direct object of *give*. *To slumber* modifies *room*.

- 71—17. Thy spirit, Independence, let me share,
 Lord of the lion heart and eagle eye :
 Thy steps I'll follow with my bosom bare ;
 Nor heed the storm that howls along the sky.

The word *Independence* is independent ; it is modified by the word *Lord* in apposition. *Spirit* is the direct object of (to) *share* ; (to) *share* modifies *let*.

- 71—18. The gay will laugh
 When thou art gone ; the solemn brood of care
 Plod on, and each one as before will chase
 His favorite phantom : yet all these shall leave
 Their mirth and their employment, and shall come
 And make their bed with thee.

Brood is in the nominative to (will) *plod* ; *on* is an adverb modifying *plod*. *As before* is equivalent to *as* (he did chase) *before*, *before* being an adverb, modifying *did chase* ; *as* is a conjunctive adverb. *Yet* is a conjunction.

- 81—1. I have heard the bells tolling.
 Tolling, a participle, modifies *bells*.

- 81—2. He saw the letter opened.
 Opened is a participle, modifying *letter*.

- 81—4. Boys like running, jumping, and skating.
 Running, *jumping*, and *skating* are participial nouns,
 in the objective after *like*.

- 82—5. The vessel anchored in the bay has lost her sails.
Anchored is a participle, modifying *vessel*.
- 82—6. Having sold my farm, I shall remove to Iowa.
Having sold is a participle, modifying *I*.
- 82—8. Have you not seen strong men weeping?
Weeping, a participle, modifies *men*.
- 82—9. The general having been captured, the army was defeated.
Having been captured modifies *general*.
- 82—10. Your remaining here would ruin us all.
Remaining is a participle used as a noun, in the nominative to *would ruin*.
- 82—11. Said¹ but¹ once, said² but² softly, not marked at all, words revive before me in darkness and solitude.
*Said*¹, *said*², and *marked* are participles, modifying *words*. *But*¹, an adverb, modifies *once*; *but*² modifies *softly*. *At all*, an adverbial phrase, modifies *marked*.
- 82—12. A man hardened in depravity would have been perfectly contented with an acquittal so complete announced in language so gracious.
Hardened, a participle, modifies *man*. *Announced*, a participle, modifies *acquittal*.
- 82—13. I heard the ripple washing in the reeds,
 And the wild water lapping on the crags.
Washing is a participle, modifying *ripple*. *Ripple* and *water* are the direct objects of *heard*. *Lapping* is a participle, modifying *water*.
- 82—14. Toiling, rejoicing, sorrowing,
 Onward through life he goes;
 Something attempted, something done,
 Has earned a night's repose.
Toiling, *rejoicing*, *sorrowing*, are participles, modifying

he. *Attempted* is a participle, modifying *something*. The second word *something* is in apposition with the first, and is modified by the participle *done*.

87—3. Bring me some flowers.

Me is the indirect and *flowers* the direct object after *bring*.

87—12. Blessed are the poor in spirit; for theirs is the kingdom of heaven:

Theirs is a pronoun in the nominative, used as the subject. *Blessed* is an adjective, modifying *poor*.

87—16. God help us! what a poor world this would be if this were the true doctrine!

God is the subject of (may) *help*. *What* is an adjective, modifying *world*.

87—19. Could he have kept his spirit to that flight, he had been happy.

Had been is equivalent to *would have been*; it agrees with *he*. *If* understood is the connective. The first clause is subordinate.

87—20. Reign thou in hell, thy kingdom; let me serve,
In heaven, God ever blest.

Kingdom is in apposition with *hell*. *God* is the direct object of *serve*. *Blest* is an adjective, modifying *God*.

88—21. Place me on Sunium's marble steep,
Where nothing save the waves and I
May hear our mutual murmurs sweep;
There, swan-like, let me sing and die.

The subject of the first member is understood. *Place* is the predicate. *Steep* is modified by the two lines following, in which *nothing* is the subject, and *may hear*, the predicate. *Save* is a preposition. *I* is used for *me* by poetic license. The phrase, *save the waves and I* (me),

modifies the word *nothing*. (To) *sweep* modifies *murmurs*. In the second member the adverbs *there* and *swan-like* modify *sing* and *die*. (To) *sing* and (to) *die* modify *let*.

1.2—3. My father brought me some pine-apples when he came from the city.

Me is the indirect, and *pine-apples* the direct, object of *brought*.

112—4. She had gone to walk.

To walk, a verb in the infinitive, modifies *had gone*.

112—7. Hallowed be thy name.

This is equivalent to "May thy name be hallowed;" the verb is in the potential mode.

112—8. Respect the *aged*.

Aged is here used as a noun.

112—9. I could not learn to do it.

To do, a verb in the infinitive, is used as a noun, in the objective after *learn*.

113—13. How many regiments were mustered out?

Were mustered out = *were discharged*, is a complex verb.

113—14. Have all the gifts of healing!

All, an adjective pronoun, is the subject of the sentence.

113—16. The poor must work in their grief.

Poor is a noun, in the nominative.

113—17. We were speedily convinced that his professions were insincere.

The clause, *that his professions*, etc., modifies *convinced*. *That* is a conjunction.

- 118—18. Hear, Father, hear our prayer!
 Long hath thy goodness our footsteps attended.

Goodness is in the nominative to *hath attended*. *Long* is an adverb, modifying *hath attended*.

- 118—19. That¹ very law that² moulds a tear,
 And bids it trickle from its source,
 That³ law preserves the earth a sphere,
 And guides the planets in their course.

*That*¹ is an adjective, modifying *law*. *That*² is a relative pronoun, in the nominative to *moulds*. (*To*) *trickle* is a verb in the infinitive, modifying *bids*. *That*³ is a pronominal adjective. *Sphere* is a factitive noun after *preserves*, and with *preserves* forms the predicate of the sentence.

- 118—20. Why restless, why cast down, my soul?
 Hope still, and thou shalt sing
 The praise of Him who is thy God,
 Thy Savior, and thy King.

The first part of this sentence is equivalent to *Why* (art thou) *restless, why* (art thou) *cast down?* *Cast down* = *dejected*, is a complex participle, used here as an attribute. *Praise* is the direct object of *shalt sing*. *God, Savior, and King* are all in the nominative after *is*.

- 118—21. If parts allure thee, think how Bacon shined,
 The wisest, brightest, meanest of mankind.

Wisest, brightest, meanest, and of mankind modify *man* understood, which is in apposition with *Bacon*.

- 118—22. If goodness lead him not, yet weariness
 May toss him to my heart.

Weariness is in the nominative to *may toss*. *Yet* is an adverb, modifying *may toss*. *May toss* is modified also by the subordinate clause, *If goodness, etc.* *If* and *yet* are correlatives.

120—6. I have read it again and again.

Again and again, a complex adverb, modifies *have read*.

www.libtool.com.cn

120—7. He will do so no more.

So and *more* are adverbs modifying *will do*; *no* is an adverb modifying *more*.

120—8. The mystery will be explained by and by.

By and by, a complex adverb, modifies *will be explained*.

120—9. Perchance you are the man.

The adverb *perchance* modifies *are*.

120—12. He lives just over the hill yonder.

Just is an adverb, modifying the phrase, *over the hill*; *yonder* is an adjective, modifying *hill*.

120—13. Henceforth let no man fear that God will forsake us.

Henceforth, an adverb, modifies *fear*. *That God will forsake us* is the direct object of *fear*.

120—17. Doubtless, ye are the people.

Doubtless, an adverb, modifies *are*.

120—18. Perhaps I shall go.

Perhaps, an adverb, modifies *shall go*.

123—3. We went over the river, through the corn-fields, into the woods yonder.

Yonder, an adjective, modifies *woods*.

125—4. I am not satisfied as to that affair.

As to is a complex preposition, equivalent to *with*.

125—5. All came but Mary.

But, a preposition, shows the relation between *Mary* and *all*.

125—6. The Rhone flows out from among the Alps.

Out is an adverb, modifying *flow*. *From among*, a complex preposition, shows the relation between *Alps* and *flows*.

125—10. Night, sable goddess! from her ebon throne,
In rayless majesty, now stretches forth
Her leaden sceptre o'er a slumbering world.

NOTE.—See page 67 for this sentence.

130—1. I am a poor man, and argue with you, and convince you.

I is understood before *argue*.

130—2. He'd sooner die than ask you or any man for a shilling.

This is equivalent to, *He would sooner die than* (he would) *ask you*, etc.

131—5. The truth is, that I am tired of ticking.

All that follows *is* is the attribute of the sentence.

131—6. I remember a mass of things, but nothing distinctly.

I remember is understood after *but*.

131—7. I alone was solitary and idle.

Alone is an adjective, referring to *I*.

131—11. The soldier marches on and on, inflicting and suffering, as before.

On and on is a complex adverb, modifying *marches*. *Inflicting* and *suffering* are participles, modifying *soldier*. *As before* is equivalent to *as* (he did) *before*.

131—13. Not a having and resting, but a growing and becoming, is the true character of perfection as culture conceives it.

Having, *resting*, *growing*, and *becoming* are participles, used as nouns, in the nominative to *is*; *not* modifies *having* and *resting* adverbially. *As* is a conjunctive adverb, connecting the clauses.

181—14. Men must be taught as if you taught them not.

As—if is a complex conjunction, connecting the clauses

181—15. Essex had neither the virtues nor the vices which enable men to retain greatness long.

Neither and *nor* are correlative conjunctions. *Long* is an adverb, modifying *retain*.

181—16. How long didst thou think that his silence was slumber?

Long is an adverb, modifying *think*; *how* modifies *long*. The direct object of *think* is all that follows that word.

181—17. Vice is a monster of so frightful mien

As to be hated needs but to be seen;

But seen too oft, familiar with her face,

We first endure, then pity, then embrace.

NOTE.—See page 111 for the discussion of this sentence.

183—5. Let them be desolate for a reward of their shame which say unto me, Aha! aha!

Aha! aha! are interjections, used here as nouns, in the objective after *say*.

183—6. Oh, that the salvation of Israel were come out of Zion!

This is equivalent to *Oh* (I wish) *that*, etc.

183—10. Soft! I did but dream.

Soft is here an interjection. *But* is an adverb, modifying *did dream*.

183—11. What! old acquaintance! could not all this flesh

Keep in a little life? Poor Jack, farewell!

I could have better¹ spared a better² man.

What and *farewell* are interjections; *acquaintance* and *Jack* are in the nominative independent. *Keep in* = *retain*, is a complex verb. *Better*¹ is an adverb, modifying *spared*; *better*² is an adjective, modifying *man*.

133—2. I send you here a sort of allegory.

You is in the objective after a preposition understood.

133—3. Our island home is far beyond the sea.

Far, an adverb, modifies the phrase *beyond the sea*.

133—4. Love took up the harp of life, and smote on all the chords with might.

Took up is a complex verb, agreeing with *Love*.

133—5. Your *If* is the only peace-maker: much virtue in *If*.

If is a noun, in the nominative to *is*. The second clause is equivalent to *Much virtue (is) in If*, in which *If* is a noun in the objective after *in*.

133—6. He is very prodigal of his *ohs* and *ahs*.

Ohs and *ahs* are here used as nouns, in the objective after *of*.

133—7. He looked upward at the rugged heights that towered above him in the gloom.

Upward, an adverb, modifies *looked*.

133—8. He possessed that rare union of reason, simplicity, and vehemence which formed the prince of orators.

The subordinate clause, *which formed*, etc., modifies *union*.

133—9. Mark well my fall, and that¹ that² ruined me.

*That*¹ is an adjective pronoun, in the objective after *mark*; *that*² is a relative pronoun, in the nominative to *ruined*.

134—11. His qualities were so happily blended that the result was a great and perfect whole.

Happily, an adverb, modifies *blended*; *so*, an adverb, modifies *happily*. The subordinate clause, *that the result*, etc., modifies *so*.

134—12. There is no joy but calm.

But calm = *without calm*, modifies *joy*.

134—13. I must be cruel, only to be kind.

To be kind modifies *cruel*. *Only* modifies *to be kind*.
By some authorities it is given as modifying *kind*.

134—14. Why are we weighed upon with heaviness?

Weighed upon is a complex verb, equivalent to *oppressed*.

134—15. Now blessings light on him that first invented sleep : it covers a man all over, thoughts and all, like a cloak.

(May) *light* is a verb, agreeing with *blessings*. *First* is an adverb, modifying *invented*. *All over* is a complex adverb, modifying *covers*. The expression is used in the sense of *entirely*. *Thoughts and all* modifies *man*. The expression is equivalent to *including thoughts and all*. *Like* is a conjunctive adverb, introducing the clause, *a cloak* (covers him).

134—16. Many a morning on the moorlands did we hear the copses ring.

Many a, a complex adjective, modifies *morning*; *morning* is in the objective after a preposition understood. (To) *ring* is a verb in the infinitive, modifying *copses*.

134—17. He stretched out his right hand at these words, and laid it gently on the boy's head.

Stretched out = *extended*, is a complex verb. *The* modifies *boy's*.

134—18. He acted ever as if his country's welfare, and that alone, was the moving spirit.

As if, a complex conjunction, introduces the subordinate clause. *Alone* is an adjective, modifying *that*.

134—19. The great contention of criticism is to find the faults of the moderns and the beauties of the ancients. Whilst an author is yet living we estimate his powers by his worst performance; and when he is dead we estimate them by his best.

To find is an infinitive attribute, having for its direct

objects *faults* and *beauties*. The subordinate clause, *Whilst an author*, etc., modifies *estimate*. *Best* modifies *performance* understood.

134—20. I will work in my own sphere, nor wish it other than it is.

Will is understood before *wish*, in the second part of the sentence. *Other* is an adjective, referring to *it*. *Other* is modified by the clause, *than it is*.

134—21. As his authority was undisputed, so it required no jealous precautions, no rigorous severity.

So and *as* are correlatives. *As* introduces the subordinate clause.

134—22. Like all men of genius, he delighted to take refuge in poetry.

Like is an adjective, followed by a preposition understood; it relates to *he*.

134—23. To know how to say what¹ other people only think, is what² makes men poets and sages; and to dare to say what³ others only dare to think, makes men martyrs or reformers, or both.

*What*¹ has a double construction; it is in the objective after *say*, and in the objective after *think*. *What*² also has a double construction; it is in the nominative after *is*, and is the subject of *makes*. *What*³ also has a double construction; it is in the objective after *say*, and in the objective after *to think*. *To know* is the subject of the first member. *How*, an adverb, modifies *to say*. *Poets* and *sages* are factitive nouns, after the word *makes*. *To dare* is the subject of the second member. The clause, *others only dare*, etc., modifies *what* (that). *Makes martyrs or reformers or both* is the predicate, in which *martyrs* and *reformers* are factitive nouns, and *both* an adjective pronoun used factitively.

134—24. That done, she turned to the old man with a lovely smile upon her face,—such, they said, as they had never seen, and never could forget,—and clung with both her arms about his neck. www.libtool.com.cn

That done is independent, *done* modifying *that*. *Turned* and *clung* form the compound predicate. The parenthetic clause, *such, they said, as they had never seen, and never could forget*, modifies *smile*. Of this clause *they* is the subject, and *said*, the predicate. There is an ellipsis. The meaning is (It was) *such* (a smile) *as* (those are) *which*, etc. *Such* and *as* are correlatives. *As* is parsed by some grammarians as a relative pronoun when used with *such*.

134—25. To live in hearts we leave behind
Is not to die.

NOTE.—See page 101 for the discussion of this sentence.

134—26. But war's a game which, were their subjects wise,
Kings would not play at.

Which is in the objective after *at*. *If*, understood, is the connective; *were wise* is the predicate of the subordinate clause, *wise* being a predicate adjective.

134—27. Whoever thinks a faultless piece to see,
Thinks what ne'er was, nor is, nor e'er shall be.

Whoever has a double construction. It is in the nominative to *thinks* in each line. *To see* is used as a noun in the objective after *thinks*. *Piece* is the direct object of *to see*. *What* has a double construction. It is in the objective after *thinks*, and in the nominative to *was, is, and shall be*.

134—28. The Niobe of nations, there she stands,
Childless and crownless, in her voiceless woe;
An empty urn within her withered hands,
Whose holy dust was scattered long ago.

Niobe is in the nominative case independent by pleo-

nasn. *There*, an adverb, modifies *stands*. *Childless* and *crowless* are predicate adjectives after *stands* = *is*. In *her voiceless woe* modifies *she*. *Urn* is in the nominative to *is* understood. *Ago* is an adverb, modifying *was scattered*, and *long* is an adverb, modifying *ago*.

134—29. Can storied urn or animated bust
 Back to its mansion call the fleeting breath?
 Can Honor's voice provoke the sleeping dust?
 Or Flattery soothe the dull, cold ear of death?

NOTE.—See page 120 for the discussion of this sentence.

135—30. Forth from his dark and lonely hiding-place
 (Portentous sight!) the owlet Atheism,
 Sailing on obscure wings athwart the noon,
 Drops his blue-fringed lids, and holds them close,
 And hooting at the glorious sun in heaven,
 Cries out, "Where is it?"

Portentous sight is independent by exclamation. *Atheism* is in apposition with the subject *owlet*. *Sailing*, a participle, modifies *owlet*. *Drops* and *holds* are predicate verbs. *Close* is an adverb, modifying *holds*. *Hooting* is a participle, modifying *he* understood. *Cries out* is a complex verb, agreeing with *he* understood. *Where is it* (it is where) is the object of *cries out* (exclaims).

135—31. A thing of beauty is a joy for ever;
 Its loveliness increases; it will never
 Pass into nothingness.

For ever, an adverb, modifies *is*.

135—32. Dry clank'd his harness in the icy caves
 And barren chasms, and all to left and right
 The bare black cliff clang'd round him, as he based
 His feet on jets of slippery crags that rang
 Sharp-smitten with the dint of arm'd heels.

Harness is the subject of the first member. *Clank'd* is the predicate verb. *Dry* is an adverb, modifying

SANTA CLARA COUNTY
 TEACHERS' LIBRARY

clanked. *In* is understood before *barren chasms*. *All* = *everywhere*, is an adverb, modifying the phrases *to left* and *(to) right*. *Left* and *right* are nouns in the objective after the preposition *to*. *Sharp-smitten* is a participle, modifying *that*. *Cliff* is the subject of the second member, and *clang'd*, the predicate.

185—33.

Then came wandering by

A shadow, like an angel with bright hair

Dabbled in blood; and he shriek'd out aloud:

"Clarence is come! false, fleeting, perjurd Clarence!

That stabbed me in the field by Tewksbury:

Seize on him, Furies, take him to your torments!"

Shadow is the subject of the first member; *came wandering* is the predicate verb, modified by the adverbs *then* and *by*. *Like* is an adjective, followed by a preposition understood. *Dabbled* is a participle, modifying *hair*. *Out* and *aloud* are adverbs, modifying *shrieked*. *Clarence is come*, etc., is the direct object of *shrieked*. The second word *Clarence* is in apposition with the first. *By Tewksbury* modifies *field*. *Furies* is in the nominative independent.

185—34. There are things of which I may not speak:

There are dreams that cannot die:

There are thoughts that make the strong heart weak,

And bring a pallor upon the cheek,

And a mist before the eye.

And the words of that fatal song

Come over me like a chill:

"A boy's will is the wind's will,

And the thoughts of youth are long, long thoughts."

There is an independent adverb in each of the first three lines. In the third line *make weak* is the predicate, equivalent to *weaken*, *weak* being a factitive adjective. The direct objects of *bring* are *pallor* and *mist*. *Like* is

a conjunctive adverb, introducing the subordinate clause, a *chill* (comes). The last two lines are explanatory of *song* in the sixth line, and modify *song* as an adjective element.

www.libtool.com.cn

135—35. These ages have no memory, but they left

A record in the desert—columns strown
 On the waste sands, and statues fallen and cleft,
 Heap'd like a host in battle overthrown;
 Vast ruins, where¹ the mountain's ribs of stone
 Were hewn into a city: streets that spread
 In the dark earth, where² never breath had blown
 Of heaven's sweet air, nor foot of man dares tread
 The long and perilous ways—the Cities of the Dead.

Columns, statues, ruins, streets, and cities are in apposition with *record*. *Strown*, a participle, modifies *columns*. *Fallen, cleft, and heaped* are participles modifying *statues*. *Like* is a conjunctive adverb, introducing *like a host in battle overthrown* (is heaped). *Overthrown* is a participle, modifying *host*. *Where¹* is a relative adverb, relating to *ruins*. *Where²* is a relative adverb, relating to *earth*. *Of heaven's sweet air* modifies *breath*. (To) *tread*, a verb in the infinitive, modifies *dares*. *Of air* modifies *breath*.

142—13. He will be heard from presently.

Will be heard from is a complex verb.

142—15. The doctor will be here immediately.

Here is an adverb, modifying *will be*.

145—7. He deserved punishment rather than pity.

This sentence is equivalent to "He deserved punishment rather than (he deserved) pity."

145—11. Alas for the man who has not learned to work!

This is equivalent to *Alas, (I am sorry) for the man, etc.*

145—13. I had a dream which was not all a dream.

All is an adverb, modifying *was* ; it means *wholly*.

145—14. A plague of all cowards, still say I.

Plague is the direct object of *say*.

145—17. When shall it be morn in the grave, to bid the slumberer awake?

The predicate here is *shall be morn*. *To bid*, a verb in the infinitive, modifies *morn*. (*To*) *awake* refers to *bid*.

145—18. The Commons, faithful to their system, remained in a wise and masterly inactivity.

Faithful, an adjective, modifies *Commons*.

147—2. Level spread the lake before him.

Spread level is equivalent to *was level* ; *level* is therefore a predicate adjective.

147—4. A soldier of the Legion lay dying in Algiers.

Lay dying is equivalent to *was dying*.

147—11. The village all declared how much he knew.

All is an adjective, modifying *village*.

147—18. Is it for thee the lark ascends and sings?

It is the subject, modified by the explanatory clause, (that) *the lark ascends and sings*.

147—15. He dares not touch a hair of Catiline.

Dares is modified by (to) *touch*.

147—19. All were sealed with the seal which is never to be broken till the great day.

Is to be broken is the predicate of the clause *which is never*, etc.

148—20. O God, we are but leaves on thy stream, clouds in thy sky.

But is an adverb, modifying *are*. *Leaves* and *clouds* are attributes.

148—22. It was now the Sabbath-day, and a small congregation of about a hundred souls had met for divine service in a place more magnificent than any temple that human hands had ever built to Deity. [libtool.com.cn](http://www.libtool.com.cn)

A hundred is a complex adjective, modifying *souls*. Should *hundred* be taken as a noun, *of* must follow. *About* is an adverb, modifying *a hundred*. *Temple* is in the nominative to *is* understood.

148—23. I know thou art gone where the weary are blest,
And the mourner looks up and is glad.

Up is an adverb modifying *looks*. *Art gone* is here used for *has gone*.

148—24. What matter how the night behaved?
What matter how the north wind raved?

The first line is equivalent to *What matter (is it) how the night behaved*. *It* is the subject, modified by the explanatory clause, *the night behaved how*. *Is matter* is the predicate. *What* modifies *matter*. The second line is similar in construction to the first.

148—25. Bird of the broad and sweeping wing,
Thy home is high in heaven,
Where the wide storms their banners fling,
And the tempest-clouds are driven.

Bird, with its modifiers, is independent. *Is high* is the predicate, *high* being a predicate adjective. The last two lines modify *heaven*, *where* being a relative adverb.

163—1. Black crags behind thee pierce the clear blue sky.
The phrase, *behind thee*, modifies *crags*.

163—5. The fate of gods may well be thine.
May be thine is the predicate, *thine* being a predicate nominative.

163—7. His architecture has become a mere framework for the setting of delicate sculpture.

Has become framework is the predicate, *framework* being a predicate nominative.

164—4. His home lay low in the valley.

Lay low is equivalent to *was low*.

164—5. We one day descried some shapeless object floating at a distance.

A preposition is understood before *day*. *Floating*, a participle, modifies *object*.

164—6. The horses ran two miles without stopping.

Miles is in the objective after a preposition understood. Some authors say it is "in the objective without a governing word."

164—8. See what a grace is seated on his brow.

The subject is understood. *Grace* is the subject of the subordinate clause. *What*, an adjective, modifies *grace*.

164—9. There is a very life in our despair.

Life is the subject. *There* is an independent adverb.

164—11. Heaven first taught letters for some wretch's aid.

Some, an adjective, modifies *wretch's*.

165—1. To doubt the promise of a friend is a sin.

To doubt is the simple subject. *Is sin* is the predicate.

165—2. He has gone to his office to write a letter.

To write modifies *has gone*.

165—3. How pleasant it is to see the sun!

The subject is *it*. *To see* modifies *it*, the subject. *Is how pleasant* is the predicate.

165—4. Not to know me argues yourself unknown.

To know is the subject, modified by *not* and *me*. *Unknown* is a factitive adjective, modifying *yourself*.

165—5. 'Tis not in mortals to command success.

It is the subject, modified by the explanatory phrase, *to command success*.

165—6. Music hath charms to soothe the savage breast.

To soothe, a verb in the infinitive, modifies *charms*.

165—7. I was not hardened enough to venture a quarrel with him then.

Hardened, the attribute, is modified by *enough*, an adverb. The phrase, *to venture*, etc., modifies *enough*.

165—8. A thousand years scarce serve to found a state.

A thousand, an adjective, modifies *years*. *Scarce*, an adverb, used for *scarcely*, modifies *serve*.

166—1. Soon rested those who fought.

Soon, an adverb, modifies *rested*. *Those* is the subject of the main clause.

166—3. He builds a palace of ice where the torrents fall.

The clause, *where the torrents fall*, modifies *builds*.

166—4. It was now a matter of curiosity who the old gentleman was.

It, the subject, is modified by the clause beginning with *who*. *Was matter* is the predicate of the main clause.

166—5. The fires of the bivouac complete what the fires kindled by the battle have not consumed.

What has a double construction; it is in the objective after *complete*, and in the objective after *have consumed*. *Kindled* modifies *fires*.

166—6. Towards night the schoolmaster walked over to the cottage where his little friend lay sick.

Over is an adverb, modifying *walked*. *Cottage* is modified by the subordinate clause, *where his little friend lay sick*. *Lay sick* is equivalent to *was sick*.

166—7. Until you become lost to all feeling of your true interest and your natural dignity, freedom they can have from none but you.

They is the subject of the sentence. The phrase, *from none*, modifies *can have*, and the phrase, *but you*, modifies *none*. *But* is here a preposition. The predicate, *can have*, is modified by the subordinate clause, *Until you become*, etc. *Lost* is an adjective after *become*.

166—8. The sound of the wind among the leaves was no longer the sound of the wind, but of the sea.

The phrase, *among the leaves*, modifies *wind*. *Longer* modifies *was*, and *no* modifies *longer*. *But of the sea* is equivalent to *but* (it was the sound) *of the sea*.

166—9. These are follies on which it would be greater folly to remark.

To remark on which modifies the subject *it*, of the subordinate clause.

167—10. I am now at liberty to confess that much which I have heard objected to my late friend's writings was well founded.

To confess modifies *liberty*. *Much* is the subject of *was founded*, and is modified by the subordinate clause, *which I have heard objected*, etc. *Which* is the object of *have heard*. *Objected* is a participle, referring to *which*.

167—11. One of his favorite maxims was, that the only way to keep a secret is never to let any one suspect that you have one.

All that follows *that* in the first line is the attribute of the main clause. Of the subordinate clause, *way*, the subject, is modified by *to keep*; the predicate is *is to let*, of which *to let* is the attribute. (To) *suspect* is an infinitive, modifying *let*.

167—12. How his essays will *read*, now they are brought together, is a question for the publishers, who have thus ventured to draw out into one piece his "weaved-up follies."

The subject of the main clause is all that precedes *is* in the second line. *Will read*, the predicate of the first clause, is modified by the subordinate clause, *now (that) they are brought together*. *Is question* is the predicate of the main clause. *To draw out* modifies *ventured*.

167—13. Examples may be heaped until they hide
The rules that they were made to render plain.

That is in the objective after *to render*. *To render* modifies *were made*. *Plain* is a factitive adjective, referring to *rules*.

167—14. Merciful wind, sing me a hoarse, rough song,
For there is other music made to-night
That I would fain not hear.

There is an independent adverb. *Is made* is the predicate in the first subordinate clause. *To-night* is an adverb, modifying *made*. The last line modifies *music*. *Fain* is an adverb, modifying *would hear*.

167—15. Woe worth the chase! woe worth the day,
That cost thy life, my gallant gray!

This is equivalent to *Woe be to the chase! woe be to the day! worth* being an old form of the imperative.

167—16. The mountain arose, with its lofty brow,
While its shadow was sleeping in vales below.

With its lofty brow modifies *mountain*. *Below*, an adjective, modifies *vales*.

172—1. God's balance, watched by angels, is hung across the sky.

Watched, a participle, modifies *balance*.

172—2. My eyes pursued him far away among the honest shoulders of the crowd.

Away, an adverb, modifies *pursued*; *far* modifies *away*.

172—3. Nothing is law that is not reason.

The clause, *that is not reason*, modifies the word *nothing*.

172—4. Vice itself lost half its evil by losing all its grossness.

Itself is in apposition with *vice*. *Half* is a noun, followed by the preposition *of* understood. The same is true of *all*. Some prefer to call these words adjectives.

172—5. There is a limit at which forbearance ceases to be a virtue.

There is an independent adverb. *Limit* is the subject of the main clause. *To be virtue* modifies *ceases*.

172—7. Were I not Alexander, I would be Diogenes.

This is equivalent to *I would be Diogenes* (if) *I were not Alexander*.

172—8. Unless he reforms soon, he is a ruined man.

The main clause is, *he is a ruined man*.

172—9. Except ye repent, ye shall all likewise perish.

All is in apposition with *ye*, the subject. *Likewise* modifies *perish*. *Except* is used in the sense of *unless*, and is a conjunction.

172—10. Withdraw thy foot from thy neighbor's house, lest he weary of thee, and so hate thee.

So modifies *hate*; *lest* connects the clauses.

172—11. I am quite sure that Mr. Hutchins rode through the village this morning.

Sure is modified by *quite* and by the subordinate clause following.

173—12. He never has a lesson, because he is too lazy to study.

To study modifies *too*.

173—14. Even by means of our sorrows we belong to the eternal plan.

Even modifies *belong*.

173—15. The gentleman who was dressed in brown-once-black had a sort of medico-theological exterior, which we afterward found to be representative of the inward man.

Brown-once-black is here used as a noun after *in*. *Which* is the object of *found*. *To be representative* modifies *which*.

173—16. Every art was practised to make them pleased with their own condition.

To make modifies *art*.

173—17. The man that blushes is not quite a brute.

Quite modifies *is*.

173—18. My soul is an enchanted boat,
Which, like a sleeping swan, doth float
Upon the silver waves of thy sweet singing.

The subordinate clause, *Which doth float*, etc., modifies *boat*. *Like* is a conjunctive adverb; *swan* is in the nominative to *doth float* understood. *Singing* is a participial noun, in the objective after *of*.

174—6. I want to be quiet and to be let alone.

To be quiet and *to be let alone* are direct objects of *want*.

174—7. The book which I loaned you, and which you lost, was a present from my father.

Which in the first line is the direct object of *loaned*. *Which* in the second line is the direct object of *lost*.

174—8. To live in a fine house and drive fast horses is the height of his ambition.

To live and *(to) drive* form the compound subject of the sentence ; *is height* is the predicate.

174—9. All the girls were in tears and white muslins, except a select two or three, who were being honored with a private view of the bride and bridesmaids, up stairs.

In the main clause the attribute is *in tears*. A verb, *were dressed*, is understood before the phrase, *in white muslins*, which is adverbial. All following the word *muslins* is a modifier of *girls*. The word *girls* is understood after *three*. The clause beginning with, *who were honored*, etc., modifies *girls* understood. *Up stairs* is a prepositional phrase, modifying *were being honored*.

174—10. There was another tap at the door—a smart, potential tap, which seemed to say, “Here I am, and in I’m coming.”

Tap in the second line modifies *tap*, the subject, being in apposition with it. All that follows *to say* is the object of that verb. *Here* modifies *am* ; and *in*, an adverb, modifies *coming*.

174—11. Not a truth has to art or to science been given,
But brows have ached for it, and souls toiled and
striven.

A modifies *truth*, and *not* modifies *a*. *Has been given* is the predicate. *Have* is understood before *toiled* and before *striven*.

177—2. He were no lion were not Romans hinds.

Were lion is the predicate of the main clause. *If* understood connects the clauses.

177—3. I would that ye all spake with tongues.

The object of *would* is all that follows that word. In the subordinate clause *ye* is the subject, *all* being a modifier in apposition with *ye*.

177—4. Thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself.

The last part of the sentence is equivalent to *as* (thou lovest) *thyself*.

www.libtool.com.cn

177—6. He made them give up their spoils.

(To) *give up* is a factitive infinitive, referring to *them*.

177—7. Go quickly, that you may meet them.

That you may meet them is an adverbial clause, modifying *go*.

177—9. The French, a mighty people, combined for the regeneration of Europe.

People is in apposition with *French*.

177—10. Not many generations ago, where you now sit, circled with all that exalts and embellishes civilized life, the rank thistle nodded in the wind, and the wild fox dug his hole unscared.

The subject of the first member is *thistle*, and of the second, *fox*. *Generations* is in the objective after a preposition understood; *circled*, a participle, modifies *you*; *ago* is an adjective, modifying *generations*. *Unscared*, an adjective, modifies the noun *fox*. *Nodded* and *dug* are modified by the phrase and the clauses preceding the words, *the rank thistle*, etc.

177—11. Very few men, properly speaking, live at present: most are preparing to live another time.

Speaking modifies the pronoun *I* understood, used independently. *At* is understood before *another time*.

177—13. While the bridegroom tarried, they all slumbered and slept.

The clause, *While the bridegroom*, etc., modifies both *slumbered* and *slept*.

177—14. Study nature, whose laws and phenomena are deeply interesting.

Nature, the direct object, is modified by the subordinate clause, *whose laws*, etc.

177—15. Its qualities exist, since they are known,¹ and are known² because they exist.

The predicate of the main clause is compound, consisting of *exist* and *are known*,² each of the verbs being modified by a subordinate clause.

177—16. At ten o'clock, my task being finished, I went down to the river.

My task being finished is independent. *At ten o'clock* = *at ten of the clock*.

177—17. Some say, that ever 'gainst that season comes
 Wherein our Saviour's birth is celebrated,
 This bird of warning singeth all night long :
 And then no spirit dares stir abroad ;
 The nights are wholesome : then no planets strike,
 No fairy takes, nor witch hath power to charm,
 So hallowed and so gracious is the time.

All that follows *say* in the first three lines is the direct object of that verb. *That* as a conjunction introduces the subordinate clause. *Ever*, an adverb, modifies *singeth*. *'Gainst* is a conjunctive adverb, in the sense of *when*. The clause, *Wherein our Saviour's birth*, etc., modifies *season*. *Night* is in the objective after a preposition understood, and is modified by *all* and *long*. *Dares* is modified by the infinitive (to) *stir*. *Power* is modified by *to charm*. *So hallowed*, etc. is one of the main clauses, in which *so* and *so* are modified by the clauses, (that) *no planets strike them, no fairy takes, nor witch hath power to charm*.

180—7. Thou denied a grave!

This is equivalent to *Thou (art) denied a grave!*

180—9. How, now, Jenkinson?

This is probably equivalent to *How (is it) now, Jenkinson?*

180—11. Rather he than I.

This is equivalent to (I would) *rather* (it were) *he than* (that it were) *I*.

180—12. The orphan of St. Louis, he became the adopted child of the Republic.

The orphan of St. Louis is independent by pleonasm. *Became child* is the predicate.

180—13. Seest thou a man wise in his own conceit? There is more hope of a fool than of him.

After *than* in the second line, *there is hope* is understood.

180—16. That building is as large as the capitol.

Insert *is large* after capitol.

180—17. Multitudes of little floating clouds,
Ere we, who saw, of change were conscious, pierced
Through their ethereal texture, had become
Vivid as fire.

Pierced is a participle, modifying *clouds*. The predicate of the main clause is *had become vivid*, modified by the subordinate clause *as fire* (is vivid). The first subordinate clause in its natural order is *Ere we, who saw, were conscious of change*. *Who saw* modifies *we*.

180—18. Then here's to our boyhood, its gold and its gray!
The stars of its winter, the dews of its May!
And when we have done with our life-lasting toys,
Dear Father, take care of thy children, the Boys!

The first part is equivalent to *Then here is* (a toast) *to our boyhood*. *To* is understood before *its gold, its gray, stars, and dews*, all of which form prepositional phrases modifying *is*. In the second member, *Dear Father* is independent; *thou* understood being the subject. *Boys* is in apposition with *children*.

180—19. Wisdom, judgment, prudence, and firmness were his predominant traits.

The subject is compound.

180—20. Rural employments are certainly natural, amusing, and healthy.

The attribute is compound.

180—21. He had a good mind, a sound judgment, and a vivid imagination.

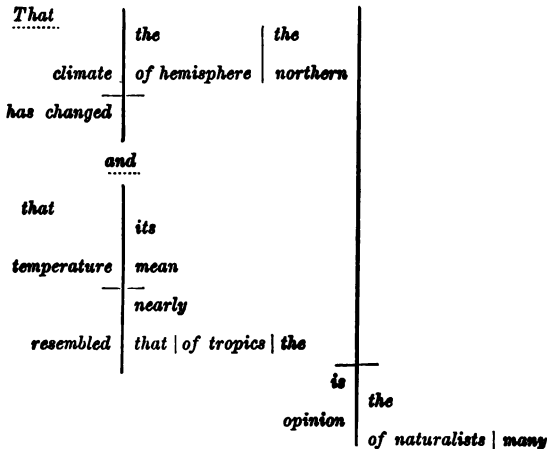
The direct object is compound.

181—28. During our voyage, we whiled away our time in reading, in writing a journal, and in studying navigation.

The phrases, *in reading, in writing a journal, and in studying navigation*, form a compound adverbial element, modifying *whiled*.

181—29. That the climate of the northern hemisphere has changed, and that its mean temperature nearly resembled that of the tropics, is the opinion of many naturalists.

The two subordinate clauses form the compound subject of the main clause. The sentence may be diagrammed as follows :



181—30. The writings of the sages show that the best empire is self-government, and that subduing our passions is the noblest of conquests.

The two subordinate clauses are direct objects in this sentence.

181—31. The chastity of honor, which felt a stain like a wound, which inspired courage while it mitigated ferocity, which ennobled whatever it touched, and under which vice itself lost half its evil by losing its grossness, is gone.

Like is an adjective. *Wound* is in the objective after a preposition understood. *Whatever* is in the objective after *ennobled* and *touched*. *Itself* is in apposition with *vice*. *Chastity* is the subject of the main clause, and *is gone* is the predicate. *Under which* modifies *lost*. *Half* is a noun, the direct object of *lost*. *Evil* is in the objective after a preposition understood.

181—32. When public bodies are to be addressed on momentous occasions, when great interests are at stake and strong passions excited, nothing is¹ valuable in speech further than it is² connected with high intellectual and moral endowments.

Nothing is the subject of the main clause. *In speech* modifies *nothing*. *Further* modifies *valuable*, and is modified by the subordinate clause introduced by *than*. *Is*² is modified by the subordinate clauses, *When public bodies, etc., when great interests, etc.,* and (when) *strong passions (are) excited*.

184—1. Cæsar having crossed the Rubicon, Pompey prepared for battle.

Cæsar is in the nominative independent, by some called the nominative absolute before a participle.

184—2. Having accumulated a large fortune, he retired from business.

Having accumulated a large fortune modifies *he*.

184—3. Being but dust, be humble and wise.

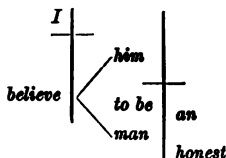
Being but dust modifies the subject *thou* understood.

184—4. Judging from his dress, I should pronounce him an artisan.

Judging, etc. modifies *I*. *Artisan* is in the same case as *him*. It is a factitive noun, referring to *him*.

184—5. I believe him to be an honest man.

All that follows *believe* is the direct object of that verb. It may be indicated in diagram as follows :



Him is used as the assumed subject of the infinitive.

184—6. There is no hope of his recovering his health.

There is an independent adverb. *Recovering* is a participle, used as a noun in the objective after *of*.

184—7. There is no prospect of the storm's abating.

There is an independent adverb. *Storm's* modifies *abating*. *Abating* is a participle, used as a noun in the objective.

184—8. Having been detained by this accident, he lost the opportunity of seeing them.

Having been detained modifies *he*, the subject of the sentence.

184—9. Having annoyed us for a time, they began to form themselves into close columns, six or eight abreast.

Having annoyed modifies *they*. The word *having* or *containing* is understood before the word *six*, and is modified by the objective *six or eight*. *Placed* is understood after *eight*. *Abreast* modifies *placed* understood.

184—10. My story being done,
She gave me for my pains a world of sighs.

My story being done is independent in construction.

www.libtool.com.cn

187—3. He was a very young boy; quite a little child.

Child is in apposition with *boy*; *quite*, an adverb, modifies *little*.

188—5. "Well, what is it?" said my lady Brook.

Brook modifies *lady*, the subject. The object of *said* is *Well, what is it?* *Well* is an independent adverb. Of the subordinate clause *it* is the subject, and *is what*, the predicate.

188—6. Suddenly the watch gave the alarm of "A sail ahead!"

Alarm is modified by the phrase of "*A sail ahead*," of which the expression *a sail ahead* may be regarded as a noun.

188—7. He saw a star shoot from heaven, and, glittering in its fall, vanish upon the earth.

(To) *shoot*, (to) *vanish*, and *glittering* modify the noun *star*.

188—10. This were a wicked pretension, even though the whole family were destroyed.

Were pretension is the predicate of the main clause. *Even though* is a complex conjunction.

188—11. And behold there came a voice unto him, and said, What dost thou here, Elijah?

Behold is an interjection. *There* is an independent adverb. The predicate is *came* and *said*, the object of *said* being the clause, *What dost thou here, Elijah?*

188—12. I passed the house many successive days.

A preposition is understood before *many*.

188—13. He wore an ample cloak of black sheep's wool, which, having faded into a dull brown, had been refreshed by an enormous patch of the original color. His countenance was that of the faded part of his cloak.

Of wool modifies *cloak*; *black* modifies *sheep*, and *sheep's* modifies *wool*. *Having faded* modifies *which*.

188—14. The line which bisects the vertical angle of a triangle divides the base into segments proportional to the adjacent sides.

Proportional modifies *segments*.

188—15. He is so good, he is good for nothing.

The second clause is subordinate, being introduced by *that* understood, and modifies *so*.

188—16. The clouds are divided in heaven: over the green hills flies the inconstant sun: red, through the stony vale, comes down the stream of the hills.

Comes red = *is red*. *Red* is an attribute after *comes* = *is*.

188—17. The accusing angel flew up to Heaven's chancery with the oath, and blushed as he gave it in. And the recording angel, as he wrote it down, dropped a tear on the word, and blotted it out for ever.

NOTE.—See page 72 for the discussion of this sentence.

188—18. In the awful mystery of human life, it is a consolation sometimes to believe that our mistakes, perhaps even our sins, are permitted to be instruments of our education for immortality.

It is the subject of the main clause. *To believe*, etc. is an explanatory phrase, modifying the subject. *Sometimes* modifies *is*. In the clause, *that our mistakes are permitted to be*, etc., the predicate is *are permitted to be instruments*, of which *are permitted* is the copula, and *to be instruments*, the infinitive attribute. *Perhaps even our sins* is equivalent to *perhaps even our sins are permitted to be*, etc., in which *perhaps* and *even* modify *are permitted to be*.

188—19. Even if his criticism had been uniformly indulgent, the position of the nobles and leading citizens, thus subjected to constant but secret superintendence, would have been too galling to be tolerated. w.libtool.com.cn

Even and *uniformly* modify *indulgent*. The subordinate clause, *if his criticism*, etc., modifies *would have been galling*. *Position* is the subject of the main clause. *Subjected*, a participle, modifies *nobles* and *citizens*. *Thus*, an adverb, modifies *subjected*. *But* connects *constant* and *secret*. *To be tolerated* modifies *too*.

188—20. No axe had leveled the giant progeny of the crowded groves, in which the fantastic forms of withered limbs, that had been blasted and riven by lightning, contrasted strangely with the verdant freshness of a younger growth of branches.

In which modifies *contrasted*.

188—21. The sun was now resting his huge disk upon the edge of the level ocean, and gilding the accumulation of clouds through which he had traveled the livelong day, and which now assembled on all sides, like misfortunes and disasters around a sinking empire and falling monarch.

Was resting and (was) *gilding* is the compound predicate. *Through which* modifies *had traveled*. A preposition is understood before *day*. *Which now assembled*, etc., refers to *clouds*. *Like* is a conjunctive adverb, introducing the clause, *misfortunes and disasters* (assemble) etc.

189—22. It is, therefore, a certain and a very curious fact, that the representative, at this time, of any great Whig family, who probably imagines that he is treading in the footsteps of his forefathers, in reality, while adhering to their party names, is acting against almost every one of their party principles.

It is the subject, modified by the explanatory clause following *fact*. *Therefore* modifies the copula *is*. *Representative* is modified by *at this time*, *of any great Whig family*, and the clause, *who probably imagines*, etc. *In*

reality modifies *is acting*. *One* is modified by *every* which is modified by *almost*. *While adhering*, equivalent to *while* (he is) *adhering*, modifies *is acting*.

189—23. Rivers will always have one shingly shore to play over, where they may be shallow, and foolish, and childlike; and another steep shore, under which they can pause and purify themselves, and get their strength of waves fully together for due occasion.

NOTE.—See page 66 for the discussion of this sentence.

189—24. I seem to have been only like a boy playing on the sea-shore, and diverting myself in now and then finding a smoother pebble or a prettier shell than ordinary, whilst the great ocean of truth lay all undiscovered before me.

The predicate of the main clause is *seem to have been like, to have been like* being the attribute. *Boy* is in the objective after a preposition understood. *Playing* and *diverting* modify *boy*. *Finding* is in the objective after *in*. *Now and then*, a complex adverb, modifies *finding*. *Than ordinary* is equivalent to *than ordinary* (pebbles are smooth or shells are pretty). *All* is an adverb, modifying *undiscovered*. *Lay undiscovered* is equivalent to *was undiscovered*. *Before me* modifies the copula *lay*.

189—25. We're nettles, some of us,

And give offense by the act of springing up.

Some is in apposition with *we*, the subject. *Springing up* is a complex participle, used as a noun.

189—26. The twilight deepened round us. Still and black

The great woods climbed the mountain at our back.

Still and *black* modify *woods*. *At our back* modifies *mountain*.

189—27. May God forgive the child of dust

Who seeks to *know* where Faith should *trust*!

The second line modifies *child*. *Where Faith should trust* modifies *seeks*.

189—29.

Better far

Pursue a frivolous trade by serious means,
Than a sublime art frivolously.

This sentence expanded is equivalent to "It is better far to pursue a frivolous trade by serious means, than it is to pursue a sublime art frivolously." *It* is the subject, modified by the infinitive phrase, *to pursue a frivolous trade*, etc. The subordinate clause, *than it is*, etc., modifies *better*. *It* is the subject of the subordinate clause, and is modified by *to pursue* understood.

189—30.

With grave

Aspect he rose, and in his rising seemed
A pillar of state; deep on his front engraven,
Deliberation sat, and public care;
And princely counsel in his face yet shone,
Majestic, though in ruin.

The predicates of the first member are *rose* and *seemed pillar*, of which *pillar* is the attribute. *Deep* modifies *engraven*. *On front* also modifies *engraven*. In the last member *shone* is the predicate. *Yet*, an adverb, modifies *shone*. *Majestic* modifies *face*.

190—31.

Near yonder copse, where once the garden smiled,
And still where many a garden flower grows wild,
There, where a few torn shrubs the place disclose,
The village preacher's modest mansion rose.
A man he was to all the country dear,
And passing rich with forty pounds a year.

Mansion is the subject of the main clause. *Preacher's* modifies *mansion*, and *village* modifies *preacher's*. *The* modifies *preacher's*. *Near* modifies *rose*. (To) *copse* modifies *near*. *Where once*, etc. modifies *copse*. *Copse* is modified also by the clause, *where many a garden flower*, etc. *Still* modifies *grows*. *Many a* modifies *flower*. In the last member *was man* is the predicate. *Dear* and

rich modify *man*. *Dear* is modified by the phrase, *to all the country*. *Passing*, an adverb, modifies *rich*. *With forty pounds*, etc., modifies *he*.

190—32. As¹ when upon a tranced summer night
 Those green-robed senators of mighty woods,
 Tall oaks, branch-charmèd by the earnest stars,
 Dream,¹ and so dream² all night without a stir,
 Save from one gradual solitary gust,
 Which comes upon the silence, and dies off,
 As² if the ebbing air had but one wave :
 So came these words and went.

Words in the last line is the subject of the main clause. *Came* and *went* is the compound predicate. *So* modifies *came* and *went*. *As¹* is a conjunctive adverb. In the first subordinate clause *senators* is the subject, with *oaks* in apposition. *Branch-charmèd* modifies *oaks*. *Dream* and *dream* is the compound predicate of this clause. *Upon a tranced summer night* modifies *dream¹*. A preposition is understood before *night* in the fourth line. *Without a stir* modifies *dream²*. *Save from gust* modifies *stir*, *save from* being a complex preposition. The subordinate clause, *which comes*, etc., modifies *gust*. The predicate of this clause is *comes* and *dies off*. *Dies* is modified by the subordinate clause, *As if the ebbing air*, etc., in which *as if* is the connective. *But* is an adverb, modifying *one*.

190—33. When Freedom, from her mountain-height,
 Unfurled her standard to the air,
 She tore the azure robe of night
 And set the stars of glory there.
 She mingled with its gorgeous dyes
 The milky baldric of the skies,
 And striped its pure, celestial white
 With streakings of the morning light.

She in the third line is the subject, and *tore and set* the predicate of the main clause. Both verbs are modified by

the first two lines, *when* being the connective. *Unfurled* is modified by *from height*, *standard*, and *to air*. In the second member *baldric* is the direct object of *mingled*. *Mingled* and *striped* is the compound predicate. *Striped* is modified by the noun *white*, and by the adverbial phrase, *with streakings*, etc.

197—1. Soldier, rest! thy warfare o'er.

Being is understood before *o'er*; *warfare* is in the nominative independent or absolute.

197—2. "Stop! the hat!" he exclaims.

"*Stop! the hat!*" is the direct object of *exclaims*. *Stop* agrees with a subject understood. "*The hat*" is probably equivalent to "*Get the hat.*"

197—3. Our fathers, where are they?

Fathers is in the nominative independent by pleonasm. *They* is the subject of the sentence.

197—4. My being a child was a plea for my admission.

Child is in the nominative independent after the participle *being*, which is used as the subject.

197—5. The north and the south, thou hast created them.

North and *south* are in the nominative independent by pleonasm.

197—9. PROBLEM III.—To construct a mean proportional between two given lines.

Problem III. is in the nominative independent by pleonasm.

198—2. The parting words shall pass my lips no more.

More is an adverb, modifying *shall pass*.

198—4. They have left unstained what there they found.

What has a double construction; it is in the objective after *left* and in the objective after *found*. *Unstained* modifies *what*.

199—7. Reading makes a full man, conference a ready man, and writing an exact man.

Makes is understood after *conference* and *writing*.

www.libtool.com.cn

199—9. His disciples said, Who, then, can be saved?

The direct object of *said* is all that follows that word. *Then* is an independent adverb.

199—10. I was forbidden the premises.

This sentence is not strictly correct. In its correct form, "The premises were forbidden to me," it presents no difficulties. Some authors, however, claim that *premises* is in the objective after *was forbidden*.

199—11. They were debarred the privilege of walking in the park.

This is not strictly a correct sentence. A better form is, *The privilege was denied*, etc. In its present form the preposition *from* is understood before *the privilege*. See last remark under 199—10.

199—12. "But what good came of it at last?"

Quoth little Peterkin.

"Why, that I cannot tell," said he;

"But 'twas a famous victory."

The first line is the direct object of *quoth*. *But* is an introductory conjunction. *Last* is used here as a noun, in the objective after *at*. In the second sentence, *why* is an independent adverb. *Said* is the predicate of the main clause. The two other clauses are both subordinate. *That* in the first is the direct object of *can tell*. *But* connects the two clauses.

200—1. We cruised about for several hours in the dense fog.

About, an adverb, modifies *cruised*.

200—5. The pile sank down into the opening earth.

Down is an adverb, modifying *sank*.

200—6. The ground lifts like a sea.

Like is a conjunctive adverb. *Sea* is in the nominative to *lifts* understood.

200—7. The clouds are driven about in the sky, like squadrons of combatants rushing to the conflict.

Like is a conjunctive adverb. *About* is an adverb, modifying *are driven*. *Squadrons* is the subject of a verb understood. *Rushing* modifies *combatants*.

200—8. In vain does the old dragon rage.

In vain, an adverbial phrase, modifies *does rage*.

200—9. I had supposed till lately that you were my friend.

Lately is here used as a noun after *till*. *Till* is a preposition. The subordinate clause is the direct object of *supposed*.

201—1. The horse ran a mile. 2. I do not care a straw. 3. He is worth a million of dollars. 4. The child is nine years old. 5. He wore his coat cloak-fashion. 6. Spring has already covered thy grave twelve times with flowers. 7. The ship sailed four knots an hour.

In the foregoing sentences *mile*, *straw*, *million*, *years*, *times*, and *knots* are by some authors said to be in the objective without a governing word. Others claim that a preposition is understood before each verb. The author prefers the latter disposition of them. In sentence 5 *cloak-fashion* is an adverb.

201—8. This is worth remembering.

Remembering is a participle, used as a noun, in the objective after a preposition understood.

201—9. The tower is two hundred and fifty feet high.

Is high is the predicate. *Feet* is in the objective after the preposition *by* understood. The complex adjective, *two hundred and fifty*, modifies *feet*.

201—10. How many square yards of plastering in a room twenty-one feet long, fifteen feet wide, and ten feet high?

Yards is the subject; *are* understood is the predicate. *Long, wide,* and *high* are adjectives, modifying *room*; each of these adjectives is modified by the phrase (by) *feet*.

201—11. The poor, dissipated student was refused his diploma.

The sentence is not correct. In its proper form it presents no difficulties. See last remark under 199—10.

204—3. Many a man shall envy him who henceforth limps.

Many a is a complex adjective, modifying *man*. *Who henceforth limps* modifies *him*.

204—7. Men are like birds that build their nests in trees that hang over rivers.

Like is an adjective, with *unto* understood after it.

204—8. He was followed by another worthless rogue, who flung away his modesty instead of his ignorance.

Another and *worthless* are adjectives, modifying *rogue*. *Away* is an adverb, modifying *flung*. *Flinging* is understood after *instead of*. *Instead of* is a complex preposition, showing the relation between *flung* and *flinging*.

204—9. A bird is placed in a bell-glass, A, which stands over the mercury.

A is a noun in apposition with *bell-glass*. The clause, *which stands*, etc., modifies *bell-glass*.

204—10.

Remorseless Time!

Fierce spirit of the glass and scythe! What power

Can stay him in his silent course, or melt

His iron heart to pity?

Time is in the nominative independent. *Spirit* is a noun in apposition with *Time*. *What* is an adjective modifying the subject *power*. *Iron* is here an adjective, limiting *heart*.

- 204—11. "Banished from Rome!" what's banished, but set
free
From daily contact of the things I loathe?
"Tried and convicted traitor!" Who says this?
Who'll prove it, at his peril, on my head?

NOTE.—See page 57 for the first two lines of this selection.

In the last two lines *traitor* is independent. *Tried* and *convicted* are adjectives, modifying *traitor*. *Who'll prove it* = *who will prove it*.

206—2. If thy hand or thy foot offend thee, cut it off, and cast it from thee.

Off is an adverb, modifying *cut*. *If thy hand or thy foot offend thee* is a subordinate clause, modifying *cut* and *cast*.

206—5. Even a rugged rock or a barren heath, though in itself disagreeable, contributes by contrast to the beauty of the whole.

Even is an adverb, modifying *contributes*. After *though* (*it is*) is understood. *In itself* modifies *disagreeable*. Another method of disposing of the sentence is to call *even though* a complex conjunction, introducing the subordinate clause, (*it is*) *in itself disagreeable*.

207—1. His spirit was so bird-like and so pure.

Was bird-like and *pure* is the predicate.

207—2. Dim, cheerless, is the scene my path around.

Is dim (and) *cheerless* is the predicate. *Around* is a preposition. In its natural order it precedes *my*.

207—3. This life of ours is a wild æolian harp of many a joyous strain.

Ours is in the objective after *of*. *Many a*, a complex adjective, modifies *strain*. *Is harp* is the predicate.

207—6. Still stands the forest primeval.

Primeval is an adjective, modifying *forest*. *Still* is an adverb, modifying *stands*.

207—7. 'Tis impious in a good man to be sad.

It is the subject, modified by the infinitive phrase *to be sad*, in which *sad* is an abstract adjective after *to be*.

207—8. To hope the best is pious, brave, and wise.

Best is a noun in the objective after *for* understood. The predicate of the sentence is *is pious, brave, and wise*.

207—9. Time wasted is existence; used, is life.

Time, the subject, is modified by the participle *wasted*. In the second part of the sentence the subject *time* is understood. It is modified by the participle *used*.

207—10. Thoughts shut up, want air
And spoil, like bales unopened to the sun.

Thoughts is modified by the participle *shut up*. *Like* is a conjunctive adverb. *Bales* is in the nominative to a verb understood, and is modified by the adjective *unopened*.

207—11. Tell me not, in mournful numbers,
Life is but an empty dream.

Me is in the objective after *to* understood. The last line is a subordinate clause, the object of *tell*. *But* is an adverb, modifying *is*.

207—12. Pray for the living, in whose breast
The struggle between right and wrong
Is raging terrible and strong.

Terrible and *strong* are adjectives, modifying *struggle*.

208—13. Petulant she spoke, and at herself she laughed;
A rose-bud set with little willful thorns,
And sweet as English air could make her.

Petulant is an adverb, used for *petulantly* by poetic

license, and modifies *spoke*. *Rose-bud* is a noun in apposition with *she*. *Set* is a participle, modifying *rose-bud*. *Sweet* is an adjective, modifying *rose-bud*.

208—14. The hills are dearest which our childish feet
Have climbed the earliest, and the streams most
sweet

Are ever those at which our young lips drank—
Stoop'd to their waters o'er the grassy bank.

The clause, *which our childish*, etc., modifies *hills*. *Earliest* is an adverb, modifying *climbed*. *The* is an adverb, modifying *earliest*. *Most sweet* is an adjective, modifying *streams*. *Ever* is an adverb, modifying *are*. *Stoop'd* is a participle, modifying *lips*. *Stoop'd* is modified by the phrase, *o'er the grassy bank*.

208—15. Sometimes her narrow kitchen walls
Stretched away into stately halls.

Away is an adverb, modifying the predicate *stretched*.

209—1. Thus many a sad to-morrow came and went.

To-morrow, a noun, is the subject. *Thus*, an adverb, modifies *came* and *went*. *Many a* modifies the subject *to-morrow*.

209—3. I alone was solitary and idle.

Alone, an adjective, modifies *I*.

209—9. The jury were not unanimous.

Not, an adverb, modifies *were*.

209—10. Generation after generation passes away.

After generation, a prepositional phrase, modifies *generation*. *Away*, an adverb, modifies *passes*.

209—12. Every age
Bequeaths the next for heritage
No lazy luxury or delight.

Next is here used as a noun, in the objective after *to*

understood. *Luxury* and *delight* are the direct objects of *bequeaths*.

209—13. *There's not a beggar in the street*
Makes such a sorry sight.

There is an independent adverb. *Beggar* is the subject of the sentence. *Who* understood is the subject of the subordinate clause. *Such* and *a* are adjectives, modifying *sight*.

209—14. *He that attends to his interior self,*
That has a heart, and keeps it—has a mind
That hungers and supplies it, and who seeks
A social, not a dissipated life,
Has business.

He, the subject, is modified by the clauses, *that attends*, etc., *that has a heart*, etc., (that) *has a mind*, etc., and *who seeks*, etc. *Mind* is modified by the clause *that hungers*, etc. *That* in the first, the second, and the third line is a pronoun. *Not* in the fourth line modifies *seeks* understood. *Has* is the predicate; *business* is the direct object of *has*.

209—15. *Between Nose and Eyes a strange contest arose :*
The spectacles set them unhappily wrong ;
The point in dispute was, as all the world knows,
To which the said spectacles ought to belong.

Nose and *Eyes* is the compound object after *between*. *Set wrong* is the predicate in the second line, *wrong* being a factitive adjective, referring to *them*. *All*, an adjective, modifies *world*. The last line is the attribute in the second member. In the subordinate clause *spectacles* is the subject, and *ought* the predicate. *Ought* is modified by *to belong*, which is modified by the phrase *to which*. *As* is a relative pronoun, object of *knows*.

210—1. *Her beauty, and not her talents, attracts attention.*
Not, an adverb, modifies *attract*, understood.

210—3. Out of the same mouth proceed blessing and cursing
Blessing and cursing is the compound subject. *Out of*
 is a complex preposition.

210—4. You and I look alike.

Look alike (are alike) is the predicate, in which *alike* is
 a predicate adjective.

210—7. Charles, together with his sister Emma, is studying
 botany.

Together with is a complex preposition. The phrase
 introduced by it modifies *Charles*. *Emma* is in apposi-
 tion with *sister*.

210—8. The crime, not the scaffold, makes the shame.

Not modifies the verb *makes*, understood after *scaffold*.

210—12. A coach and six is, in our time, never seen, except
 as a part of some pageant.

Coach and six may be taken as a complex noun; it is
 the subject of *is seen*. *Except* is a conjunction. *As a*
part = (it is seen) *as a part*.

210—18. An hour, a day, of virtuous liberty
 Is worth a whole eternity of bondage.

Hour and *day* are the subjects connected by *or* under-
 stood. *Is worth* is the predicate, *worth* being a predicate
 adjective, followed by a preposition understood.

212—1. To give an affront, or to take one tamely, is no mark
 of a great mind.

To give and *to take* form the compound subject. *Is*
mark is the predicate.

212—6. Neither poverty nor riches is desirable.

Neither and *nor* are correlative conjunctions; *neither* is
 introductory and *nor* connects. The analysis may be in-
 dicated as follows :



212—9. The breezy call of incense-breathing morn,
 The swallow twittering from the straw-built shed,
 The cock's shrill clarion or the echoing horn,
 No more shall rouse them from their lowly bed.

The compound subject is *call, swallow, clarion* or *horn*. The predicate is *shall rouse*. *Twittering* is a participle, modifying *swallow*. *More* is an adverb, modifying *shall rouse*. *No* is an adverb, modifying *more*.

212—10. From the high host
 Of stars to the lulled lake, and mountain coast,
 All is concentrated in a life intense,
 Where not a beam, nor air, nor leaf is lost.

All is the subject, modified by the first two lines. *Is concentrated* is the predicate. *Intense* is an adjective modifying *life*. The last line is a subordinate clause modifying *life*. *A* modifies *beam*, and *not* modifies *a*

212—11. Time, nor Eternity, hath seen
 A repetition of delight
 In all its phases; ne'er hath been
 For men or angels that which *is*.

Neither is understood before *Time*. The phrase, *in all its phases*, modifies *delight*. In the last member, *that* is the subject, and *hath been*, the predicate. *Hath been* is modified by *ne'er* and by the phrase, *for men or angels*. *Which is* modifies *that*.

214—1. To do right, is to do that which is ordered to be done.

To do is the subject. *Is to do* is the predicate. *Right* is the object of *to do*, the subject; *that* is the object of the attribute *to do*. In the subordinate clause, *is ordered to be done* is the predicate, of which *is ordered* is the copula.

214—3. To do justice and judgment is more acceptable to the Lord than sacrifice.

To do is the subject, modified by *justice* and *judgment*. *Is acceptable* is the predicate. The subordinate clause is *than sacrifice* (is acceptable).

214—4. It is our duty to try, and our determination to succeed.

It is the subject, modified by the explanatory phrase *to try*. In the second member *it* understood is the subject, modified by the explanatory phrase *to succeed*.

214—5. He had dared to think for himself.

Had dared is the predicate, modified by *to think for himself*.

214—6. It is the curse of kings to be attended

By slaves that take their humors for a warrant

To break within the bloody house of life,

And on the winking of authority

To understand a law.

It is the subject, modified by *to be attended*, etc. *Slaves* is modified by *that take*, etc. *Warrant* is modified by *to break* and *to understand*. *Law* is the direct object of *break* and *understand*. *Is curse* is the predicate of the main clause.

214—7. Have ye brave sons? Look¹ in the next fierce brawl
To see them die. Have ye fair daughters? Look²
To see them live, torn from your arms, distained.

Dishonored, and if ye dare call for justice,
Be answered by the lash.

To see modifies *look*.¹ (To) *die* modifies *them*. In the third line *To see* modifies *look*.² (To) *live* modifies *them*. *Torn*, *distained*, and *dishonored* are participles, modifying *them*. *Ye understood* is the subject of the third member. *Be answered* is the predicate. The subordinate clause, *if ye dare*, etc., modifies *be answered*. (To) *call* modifies *dare*.

215—1. I come not here to talk.

Here and *to talk* modify *come* adverbially. *Not* modifies *to talk*.

215—3. In sooth, deceit maketh no mortal gay.

Maketh gay is the predicate, *gay* being a factitive adjective, referring to *mortal*. *In sooth* modifies the verb *maketh*.

215—4. I saw along the winter snow a spectral column pour.

Column is the direct object of *saw*. (To) *pour* modifies *column*. *Pour* is modified by the phrase, *along the winter snow*.

215—5. Let the great world spin for ever down the ringing grooves of change.

(To) *spin* modifies *let*. *For ever*, an adverb, modifies *spins*.

215—7. It is a brave thing to understand something of what we see.

It, the subject, is modified by *to understand*, etc. *What* has a double construction, being in the objective after *of* and in the objective after *see*.

215—8. It is better to fight for the good than to rail at the ill.

It, the subject, is modified by the explanatory phrase,

to fight for the good. In the subordinate clause, *it is good* is understood; thus, *than* (it is good) *to rail at the ill.* *To rail,* etc. is explanatory of *it*, the subject understood.

- 215—9. Let us be content in work,
To do the thing we can, and not presume
To fret because it's little.

(To) *be content* modifies *let*. *Let* is modified also by the phrase (to) *presume*, etc. *To do*, etc. modifies *content*. *Thing* is modified by the clause, (which) *we can* (do). *To fret* modifies *presume*.

- 215—10. One day with life and heart
Is more than time enough to find a world.

With life and (with) *heart* modifies *day*. *Is* (time) is the predicate. *More* modifies *time* understood. The clause, *than time enough* (is), etc. modifies *more*. *To find*, etc. modifies *enough*.

- 215—11. Needful auxiliars are our friends, to give
To social man true relish of himself.

Friends is the subject; *are auxiliars* is the predicate. *To give* modifies *auxiliars*. *Relish* is the object of *to give*.

- 215—12. Learn well to know how much need not be known,
And what that knowledge which impairs your sense.

To know is the object of *learn*. Of the first subordinate clause, *much* is the subject and *need* or (does) *need* is the predicate, modified by *not* and (to) *be known*. Both the first and the second subordinate clause modify *know* objectively. Of the second clause, *knowledge* is the subject, modified by the clause, *which impairs*, etc. (Is) *what* is the predicate.

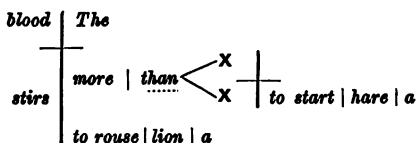
- 215—18. Let him not violate kind nature's laws,
But own man born to live as well as die.

(To) *violate* modifies *let*. *Let* is modified also by (to)

own. *Own* is modified by the expression *man* (to be) *born to live as well as die*. *Born* is modified by *to live* and *to die*, connected by the complex conjunction *as well as*.

215—14. The blood more stirs
 To rouse a lion than to start a hare.

Blood is the subject, and *stirs* is the predicate of the main clause. *To rouse*, etc. modifies *stirs*. *More* also modifies *stirs*. The subordinate clause modifies *more*. The analysis may be indicated thus :



215—15. He that lacks time to mourn, lacks time to mend.
 Eternity mourns that.

He is modified by the subordinate clause following. *To mourn* modifies *time*. In the predicate, *to mend* modifies *time*.

217—1. All the world was ours once more.

Was ours is the predicate, *ours* being in the nominative after *was*. *More* modifies *was*, and *once* modifies *more*.

217—3. I saw the blue Rhine sweep along.

(To) *sweep* modifies *Rhine*; *along*, an adverb, modifies *sweep*.

217—4 Death erects his batteries right over against our homes.

Over against homes modifies *erects*. *Over against* is a complex preposition. *Right* is here an adverb, modifying *over against homes*.

217—6. The complication of a town is often happily unraveled by starting from a main trunk.

Often and *happily* are adverbs, modifying *is unraveled*. *Starting* is a participle, used as a noun in the objective after *by*.

217—7. Man desires not only to be loved, but to be lovely.

But in this sentence should be followed by *also*. *Not only* and *but also* are here the proper correlatives. *Not only* modifies *desires* and (but) *also* connects *to be loved* and *to be lovely*. The sentence may also be construed to mean *man desires not only to be loved, but (he desires also) to be lovely*.

217—10. We see but dimly through the mists and vapors.

Dimly modifies *see*; and *but*, an adverb, modifies *dimly*.

217—11. Man by man, and foot by foot, did the soldiers proceed over the Alps.

Man by man and *foot by foot* are equivalent to (with) *man by man* and (with) *foot by foot*. The phrases modify *proceed*. *By man* and *by foot* modify *followed* understood.

217—12. Finally, the war is already begun, and we must either conquer or perish.

Finally is an independent adverb. *Already* modifies *is begun*. *Either* and *or* are correlative conjunctions.

217—13. He heaped up great riches, but passed his time miserably.

Heaped up, a complex verb, is the predicate of the first member. *He* is understood before *passed*.

218—14. Night's candles are burnt out, and jocund Day
Stands tiptoe on the misty mountain's top.

Are burnt out, a complex verb, is the predicate of the

first member. *Tiptoe* is in the objective after *on* understood. By some *tiptoe* is regarded as an adverb. *Misty*, an adjective, modifies *mountain*.

218—15. I'll look no more,
Lest my brain turn, and the deficient sight
Tattle down headlong.

More is an adverb, modifying *look*; *no* modifies *more*. *Lest*, a subordinate conjunction, introduces the subordinate clauses. *Down* and *headlong* are adverbs, modifying *tattle*.

218—16. Not a word to each other; we kept the great pace—
Neck by neck, stride by stride, never changing our
place.

The first member is equivalent to (We spoke) *not a word to each other*, in which *each* is in apposition with the subject *we*; *other* is in the objective after *to*. *Not* modifies *a*, and *a* modifies *word*. The last line is equivalent to (with) *neck by neck*, (with) *stride by stride*, etc. *Changing* is a participle, modifying the subject *we*.

218—17. Their breath is agitation, and their life
A storm whereon they ride to sink at last.

In the second member the word *is* is understood after *life*, forming with *storm* the predicate of that member. *Storm* is modified by the subordinate clause following. *Whereon* modifies *ride*.

218—18. Who does the best his circumstance allows,
Does well, acts nobly; angels could no more.
Our outward act indeed admits restraint;
'Tis not in things o'er thought to domineer.
Guard well thy thought; our thoughts are heard in
heaven.

The subject of the first member is *he* understood, modified by the clause, *who does*, etc. *Does* is modified

by *best*, a noun, and *best* is modified by the clause, (that) *his circumstance allows*, *that* being a pronoun in the objective understood after *allows*. *Does* and *acts* is the compound predicate of the main clause. By some, *angels could do*, etc., is made a subordinate clause, introduced by *for* understood. *More* is used as a noun, in the objective after *do*. In the third line, *indeed* modifies *admits*. *It* is the subject in the fourth line, modified by the explanatory phrase, *to domineer o'er thought*. *Not* and *in things* modify *is*. *For* is understood before *our thoughts*, etc., the clause being subordinate.

220—1. Come as the winds come when navies are stranded.

As is a conjunctive adverb. *When* also is a conjunctive adverb.

220—2. I never thought that it could be so.

That is a conjunction ; *so* is an adverb.

220—3. He locks the door after the horse is stolen.

After is a conjunctive adverb.

220—4. I now know why you deceived me.

Why is an adverb, modifying *deceived*.

220—5. He will have friends wherever he may be.

Wherever is a conjunctive adverb.

220—7. However stern he may seem, he is a good man.

However is an adverb, modifying *stern*.

220—8. While there is life, there is hope.

While is a conjunctive adverb. *There* and *there* are independent adverbs.

220—9. Blessed are the merciful : for they shall obtain mercy.

For is a subordinate conjunction.

220—10. He rushes to the fray as if he was summoned to a banquet.

As if is a complex subordinate conjunction.

220—11. Whether the planets are inhabited was discussed last evening.

Whether is an introductory conjunction, introducing the clause, *the planets are inhabited*, which is the subject of the main clause.

220—12. I consent to the constitution, because¹ I expect no better, and because² I am not sure it is not the best.

*Because*¹ is a subordinate conjunction; the same is true of *because* in the second line. *Sure*, an adjective, is modified by the clause, (that) *it is not the best*, *that* being a subordinate conjunction, and *best* a noun. *Best* may also be considered an adjective, modifying a noun understood.

220—13. I do not know where he is.

Where is an adverb, modifying *is*.

220—14. There was so much noise that I could not sleep.

There is an independent adverb. *So* is an adverb, modifying the adjective *much*. *That* is a subordinate conjunction.

220—15. We meet in joy, though we part in sorrow;
We part to-night, but we meet to-morrow.

Though is a subordinate conjunction. *But* is a co-ordinate conjunction. *To-night* and *to-morrow* are adverbs. The first line is a complex sentence; the second, compound.

221—8. Pshaw! there's no distress in that.

Pshaw is an interjection; *there* is an independent adverb.

221—18. Hark! they whisper: angels say,
Sister spirit, come away.

Hark is an interjection. *Spirit* is a noun in the nominative independent. *Away* is an adverb, modifying *come*.

228—1. He has been ill since November.

Since is a preposition, showing the relation between *November* and *has been*.

228—2. I will go, provided he sends me.

Provided is a subordinate conjunction.

228—3. Can you not still this noise?

Still is a verb. The predicate is *can still*.

228—4. The rain still continues.

Still is an adverb, modifying *continues*.

228—5. The before-mentioned facts are before you.

Before is a preposition; *before-mentioned* is an adjective.

228—7. This boy is full ten years old.

Old is a predicate adjective; *years* is a noun, in the objective after a preposition understood. *Full* is an adverb, modifying *ten*.

228—8. I never saw¹ a saw² saw³ a saw⁴ as that saw⁵ saws a saw.⁶

*Saw*¹ is a verb; *saw*² is a noun; (to) *saw*³ is a verb in the infinitive; *saw*⁴ is a noun, the object of *saw*³; *saw*⁵ is a noun in the nominative to *saws*; and *saw*⁶ is a noun, the direct object of *saws*.

228—9. What with the bread, and what with the water, he sustained himself for several weeks.

What and *what*, meaning partly, are adverbs, modifying *with bread* and *with water*,

228—10. Give me such as I bargained for, and as much as I bargained for.

This sentence may be taken as equivalent to, *Give me such as* (that is which) *I bargained for and as much as* (that is which) *I bargained for*. Some authorities would call *as* a relative pronoun after *for*. The former is the preferable disposition of the sentence.

228—11. What, then, could be done?

Then is an independent adverb.

228—12. He has come round.

Round is an adverb, modifying *come*.

228—14. The weight of this box is forty pounds.

Pounds is a noun, in the nominative after *is*.

228—15. The stars are out by twos and threes.

Out is an adverb, modifying *are*; *twos* and *threes* are nouns in the objective after *by*.

228—16. Whether is greater, the gold or the temple.

Whether, an obsolete form of *which*, is a pronoun. *Gold* and *temple* are nouns in apposition with the subject *whether*.

228—18. No man can come unto me except the Father draws him.

Except, used incorrectly here for *unless*, is a conjunctive adverb.

229—19. He maketh me to lie down in green pastures.

To lie, a factitive infinitive, modifies *me*; *down* is an adverb, modifying *to lie*.

229—20. They have promised, yet they do not perform.

Yet is a conjunction, in the sense of *but*.

229—21. One came, methought, and whispered in my ear.

Methought is equivalent to *I thought*.

229—22. He that catches at more than belongs to him, justly deserves to lose what he has.

More is a noun in the objective after *at*. *Than belongs to him* is equivalent to *than* (that is, which) *belongs to him*. *What* is in the objective after *lose* and *has*.

229—23. All this I heard as one half dead; but answer had I none to words so true, save tears for my sins.

As is a conjunctive adverb. *One* is the subject of *hears* understood. *Dead* is an adjective, modifying *one*, and *half*, an adverb, modifies *dead*. *None*, an adjective, modifies *answer*. *True*, an adjective, modifies *words*; so modifies *true*. *Answer* is modified also by the phrase, *save tears*, in which *save* is a preposition.

229—24. Dreaming, she knew it was a dream.

Dreaming is a participle, modifying *she*.

229—25. I have told what and how true thou art.

This is equivalent to *I have told* (thou art) *what and thou art how true*.

229—26. He thought only of his subject.

Only is an adverb, modifying the phrase *of subject*.

229—27. The path of glory leads but to the grave.

But is an adverb, modifying *to grave*.

229—29. Angling is somewhat like poetry: men are apt to be born so.

Like is an adjective; *poetry* is the object of a preposition understood. *So* is an adverb, modifying *born*.

229—30. And the final event to himself has been that, as he rose like a rocket, he fell like the stick.

And is an introductory conjunction. *Has been* is the copula, and all that follows is the attribute of the main clause. *That* is a subordinate conjunction. *Like* and

like are conjunctive adverbs. *Rocket* is in the nominative to *rises* understood, and *stick* is in the nominative to *falls* understood.

www.libtool.com.cn

229—31. There shall nothing die of all that is the children's of Israel.

There is an independent adverb. *Of all*, with what follows, modifies *nothing*. The possessive sign should be attached to *Israel* rather than *children*, the name *children of Israel* being complex, and used together as the attribute after *is*.

229—32. We have just come from Brown and Starr's.

Brown and Starr's is in the objective after *from*.

229—33. Three times seven are twenty-one.

This is equivalent to *seven (taken by) three times is twenty-one*. *Seven* is the subject. *Is twenty-one* is the predicate. *Taken* modifies *seven*. *By times* modifies *taken*.

229—34. I paid thirty-seven and a half cents for butter this morning.

Thirty-seven and a half is a complex adjective, modifying *cents*.

229—35. Wheat is two dollars a bushel.

Worth is understood after *is*. *Is (worth)* is the predicate. *Dollars* and *bushel* are each in the objective after a preposition understood.

229—36. He ran the train at the rate of forty miles an hour.

A preposition is understood before the noun *hour*. *Train* is the direct object after *ran*.

229—37. The more I see of him the better I like him.

More is an adverb, modifying *see*; *the* is an adverb,

modifying *more*. *The* in the second part of the sentence is an adverb, modifying *better*. The second clause in such sentences is always the main clause.

229—38. Let your communication be yea, yea, and nay, nay.

(To) *be* modifies *let*. *Yea, yea, and nay, nay* are in the nominative case after the infinitive (to) *be*, by predication.

229—39. As¹ far¹ as² the east is from the west, so far² hath He removed our transgressions from us.

So far he hath removed, etc. is the main clause. *Far²* modifies *from us*. *So* modifies *far*. *As far as the east* etc. is the subordinate clause, modifying *far²*. *Far¹* modifies the phrase *from west*. *As¹* modifies *far¹*.

229—40. Therefore, if thine enemy hunger, feed him; if he thirst, give him drink: for in so doing thou shalt heap coals of fire on his head.

Therefore is an introductory conjunction. *If thine*, etc. modifies *feed*; *if he thirst* modifies *give*. *Doing* is a participle, used as a noun in the objective after *in*.

229—41. It is good for us to be here.

It, the subject, is modified by the explanatory phrase, *to be here*. *For us* modifies *good*.

229—42. Consider the lilies of the field, how they grow; they toil not, neither do they spin.

How they grow modifies *consider*.

229—43. A little one shall become a thousand, and a small one a strong nation.

A thousand is predicate nominative after *shall become*, and *nation* is in the nominative after *shall become* understood.

229—44. If I forget thee, O Jerusalem, let my right hand forget her cunning.

(To) *forget* is in the infinitive, modifying *let*.

229—45. Hitherto shalt thou come, but no further.

Hitherto, an adverb, modifies *shalt come*. After *but*, the clause *Thou shalt come* is understood. *Further*, incorrectly used here for *farther*, is an adverb, modifying *shalt come* understood; *no* modifies *further*.

229—46. Yet man is born unto trouble, as the sparks fly upward.

Yet is an introductory conjunction. *As* is a conjunctive adverb.

229—47. "Madam," said I, emphatically, "you are in an error."

Madam is in the nominative independent. *Emphatically* is an adverb, modifying *said*. *In error* is a phrase attribute after *are*.

229—48. How feeble were the attempts at planting towns is evident from the nature of the tenure by which the lands near the Saco were held.

How feeble were the attempts at planting towns is the subject of the main clause. *Is evident* is the simple predicate. *By which* modifies *were held*. *Near* modifies *lands*. *To* is understood before *Saco*.

229—49. This is—what shall we call it?

The predicate is all that follows *this*. All that follows *is* is a clause attribute, of which the predicate is *shall call what*, and *it*, the direct object.

229—50. It is he,¹ even he².

By some *even* is taken as a conjunction, the sentence meaning, *It is he even* (it is) *he*. *Even* may also be considered an adverb, modifying *is*; *he²* being in apposition with *he¹*.

229—51. He was not even invited to be present.

To be present is an infinitive attribute after *was invited*.
Even is an adverb, modifying *invited*.

229—52. Is your health good now?—Rather so.

Good is a predicate adjective. *Now* is an adverb, modifying *is*. *So* is a predicate adjective; the full clause being (It is) *rather so*.

229—53. The garret was filled with broken chairs, cast-off garments, and what not.

What not = *other things*, may be taken as a noun.

230—54. How long was it before the man came to?—About three-quarters of an hour.

It is the subject. *Came to* is a complex verb, in the sense of *revived*. *Before* is a conjunctive adverb. The clause, *before the man came to*, modifies *it*, the subject. The second member is equivalent to (It was) *about three-quarters of an hour*. *Quarters* is the attribute in this member, and is modified by *three*. *About*, an adverb, modifies *three*.

230—55. No quips, now, Pistol: indeed, I am in the waist two yards about.

Now is an independent adverb. *Quips* is the object of *give* understood. *Indeed* is an adverb, modifying *am*. *In waist* is an attribute phrase after *am*. *Yards* is in the objective after a preposition understood. *About* is an adverb, modifying *two*.

230—56 He that will not when he may,
 When he would he shall have nay.

The first line is independent by pleonasm. A principal verb, probably *do*, is understood after *will* and *may*. In the last line *may* is in the objective after *shall have*. *Shall have* is modified by the subordinate clause, *when he would*.

230—57. For what is worth in anything
But so much money as 'twill bring.

For is an introductory conjunction. *Worth*, a noun, is the subject, and *is what* is the predicate of the main clause. The phrase, *in anything*, modifies *worth*. *But* is a preposition with *money* as its object. *Much* modifies *money*, and *so* modifies *much*. *As it will bring* modifies *money*. *As*, in the sense of *which*, may be regarded as a relative pronoun.

230—58. The swan on still St. Mary's lake
Float double, swan and shadow.

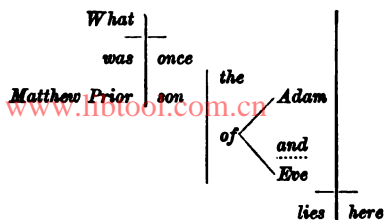
In order to make this sentence clear it must be taken in connection with the lines that precede; thus,

Let beeves and home-bred kine partake
The sweets of Burn-mill meadow;
The swan¹ on still St. Mary's lake
Float double, swan² and shadow!

Swan is in the objective after *let* understood. (To) *float* modifies *let*. *Double* is an adjective attribute after *float*, the copula. *Swan*² and *shadow* are in apposition with *swan*¹.

230—59. Here lies what once was Matthew Prior:
The son of Adam and Eve:
Can Bourbon or Nassau claim higher?

What is the subject, and *was Matthew Prior* is the predicate of the subordinate clause, all of which is the subject of the main clause. *Lies here* is the predicate of the main clause, *here* modifying *lies*. *Son* is in apposition with *Matthew Prior*. *Once* modifies *was*. *Higher* is an adjective, modifying *lineage* understood. The analysis may be indicated as follows:



230—60. I cannot tell what you and other men
 Think of this life ; but for my single self,
 I had as¹ lief not be as² live to be
 In awe of such a thing as³ I myself.

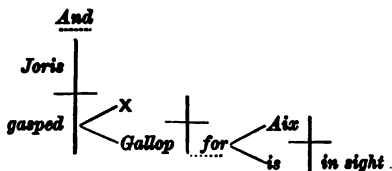
What is in the objective after *tell* and after *think*. *But* is a co-ordinate conjunction, connecting the two members. Of the second member, *I* is the subject, modified by the phrase, *for my single self*. *Had be* is the predicate. *Lief* and *not* are adverbs, modifying *be*. *As¹* is an adverb, modifying *lief*. *As²* is a conjunctive adverb. *I would* is understood before *live*. *As³* introduces the clause, *as I myself* (am).

230—61. Think for thyself—one good idea,
 But known to be thine own,
 Is better than a thousand gleaned
 From fields by others sown.

Think agrees with a subject understood. Of the next clause *idea* is the subject. *Known*, a participle, modifies *idea*. *But* is an adverb, modifying *known*. *To be* (*idea*) modifies *known*, adverbially. *Own* and *thine* modify *idea* understood. *Is better* is the predicate. *Better* is modified by the clause following, *than* being the connective. Of the last clause, *a thousand* is the subject; the predicate, (*are good*), is understood. *Gleaned* is a participle, modifying *thousand*. *Sown* is a participle, modifying *fields*. *A thousand* may also be taken as a complex adjective, modifying *ideas*.

230—62. So we were left galloping, Joris and I,
 Past Looz and past Tongres, no cloud in the sky:
 The broad sun above laughed a pitiless laugh;
 'Neath our feet broke the brittle bright stubble like
 chaff;
 Till over by Dalhem a dome-spire sprang white,
 And "Gallop," gasped Joris, "for Aix is in sight."

Joris and *I* are in apposition with the subject *we*.
Were left galloping is the predicate of the first member.
No cloud (being) *in the sky* is independent in construction.
 The last two lines modify *were left galloping*.
White modifies *dome-spire*. *Over by* is a complex preposition.
 The analysis of the last line may be represented
 as follows :



In line three, *above* is an adjective, modifying *sun*. In
 line four, *like* is a conjunctive adverb, and *chaff* is in the
 nominative to a verb understood.

230—63. This well may be
 The Day of Judgment which the world awaits;
 But, be it so or not, I only know
 My present duty and my Lord's command
 To occupy till he come. So at the post
 Where he hath set me in his providence
 I choose for one to meet him face to face,—
 No faithless servant frightened from my task,
 But ready when the Lord of the harvest calls.

This is the subject of the first member, and *may be Day
 of Judgment* is the predicate. *Well* is an adverb, modify-
 ing *may be*. *But* connects the two members. Of the

second member, *I* is the subject of the main clause, and *know* is the predicate. *Only* modifies *know*. The direct objects of *know* are *duty* and *command*. *To occupy* modifies *command*. The subordinate clause, *be it so or not*, is equivalent to *be it so* or (be it) *not* (so), and modifies *know*. Of the second sentence, *I* is the subject, and *choose*, the predicate. *For one* modifies *I*. *Servant* is in apposition with *I*. *Frightened* is a participle, modifying *servant*. *Ready*, an adjective, modifies *servant*. *Ready* is modified by the adverbial clause, *when the Lord*, etc. *To meet* is the direct object of *choose*. *To meet* is modified by the phrase, *at the post*. *Post* is modified by the adjective clause, *where he hath set*, etc. *Face to face* may be taken as an adverb, or it may be taken as equivalent to "(with) *face* (placed) *to face*."

www.libtool.com.cn

SENTENCES

www.libtool.com.cn
FROM

REED & KELLOGG'S

HIGHER LESSONS IN ENGLISH.

NOTE.—In the following, the page-numbers are from the original edition of *Higher Lessons in English*. The lesson-numbers are the same in all editions.

Lesson 14.

- 83—2. The old historic Charter Oak was blown down.
Charter Oak is the simple subject.
- 83—4. Bright-eyed daisies peep up everywhere.
Up and *everywhere* modify *peep*.
- 84—8. We both turned rather abruptly.
Both modifies *we*. *Rather* modifies *abruptly*.
- 84—10. Why will people exaggerate so.
Why and *so* modify *will exaggerate*.
- 84—12. We now travel still more rapidly.
More modifies *rapidly*, and *still* modifies *more*.
- 84—18. Therefore he spoke excitedly.
Therefore modifies *spoke*.
- 84—14. You will undoubtedly be very cordially welcomed.
Undoubtedly, an adverb, modifies *will be welcomed*;
very modifies *cordially*.
- 84—15. A furious equinoctial gale has just swept by.
Just is an adverb, modifying *has swept by*. *Has swept by* is a complex verb.

84—16. The Hell Gate reef was slowly drilled away.

Hell Gate is an adjective, modifying *reef*. *Slowly* and *away* are adverbs, modifying *was drilled*.

Lesson 17.

88—2. The Gulf Stream can be traced along the shores of the United States by the blueness of the water.

Gulf Stream is the simple subject.

88—3. The North Pole has been approached in three principal directions.

North Pole, a complex noun, is the simple subject.

88—4. In 1607, Hudson penetrated within six hundred miles of the North Pole.

The phrase *in 1607* modifies *penetrated*. *Penetrated* is modified also by the phrase *within miles*. *Six hundred*, a complex adjective, modifies *miles*; *miles* is modified also by the phrase, *of the North Pole*.

88—6. The Delta of the Mississippi was once at St. Louis.

Was is modified by *once* and the phrase, *at St. Louis*.

88—8. Genius can breathe freely only in the atmosphere of freedom.

NOTE.—See page 19 for the analysis of this sentence.

88—9. The Suspension Bridge is stretched across the Niagara river just below the Falls.

Suspension Bridge is the simple subject. *River* is modified by *the* and *Niagara*. The phrase, *below the Falls*, modifies *is stretched*. *Just* modifies the phrase *below Falls*, an adverbial element.

88—10. In Mother Goose the cow jumps clear over the moon.

In Mother Goose modifies *cow*. *Clear* modifies the phrase *over the moon*.

38—12. The first astronomical observatory in Europe was erected at Seville by the Saracens.

Was erected is modified by the phrases *at Seville* and *by the Saracens*.

38—13. The tails of some comets stretch to the distance of 100,000,000 miles.

Distance is modified by the phrase *of miles*. *100,000,000* is an adjective, modifying *miles*.

38—14. The body of the great Napoleon was carried back from St. Helena to France.

Was carried is modified by *back, from St. Helena, and to France*.

Lesson 20.

42—2. In a letter we may advise, exhort, comfort, request, and discuss.

The compound predicate is *may advise, exhort, comfort, request, and discuss*, all modified by the phrase, *in a letter*.

43—4. The hero of the Book of Job came from a strange land and of a strange parentage.

Hero, the subject, is modified by the phrase *of the Book of Job*, of which *Book of Job*, a complex noun, is the basis. *Came* is modified by the two phrases, *from a strange land* and *of a strange parentage*.

43—5. The optic nerve passes from the brain to the back of the eyeball, and there spreads out.

Of the eyeball modifies *back*. *Spreads* is modified by *there* and *out*. *Passes* and *spreads* is the compound predicate.

43—6. Between the mind of man and the outer world are interposed the nerves of the human body.

Nerves is the subject; *are interposed* is the predicate. The preposition *between* has a compound object, *mind* and *world*.

43—7. All forms of the lever and all the principal kinds of hinges are found in the body.

The subject is compound, consisting of the two simple subjects, *forms* and *kinds*.

43—8. By perfection is meant the full and harmonious development of all the faculties.

Development is the subject of the sentence. The adjective element, *full and harmonious*, is compound. *By perfection* modifies *is meant*.

43—9. Ugh! I look forward with dread to to-morrow.

Ugh is an interjection. *Forward* is an adverb, modifying *look*. *Look* is modified also by the two phrases, *with dread* and *to to-morrow*.

43—10. From the Mount of Olives, the Dead Sea, dark and misty and solemn, is seen.

Dead Sea is the subject. The adjective element, *dark and misty and solemn*, is compound. *Mount of Olives* is a complex noun, in the objective after *from*.

43—11. Tush! tush! 'twill not again appear.

Tush and *tush* are interjections. *It* is the subject. *Not* and *again* modify the predicate *will appear*.

43—12. A sort of gunpowder was used at an early period in China and in other parts of Asia.

Sort is the subject of the sentence. The phrase, *in China and in parts*, is compound.

43—13. Some men sin deliberately and presumptuously.

The adverbial modifier is compound.

43—14. Feudalism did not and could not exist before the tenth century.

Exist is understood after *not*. *Before the tenth century* modifies both verbs.

43—15. The opinions of the New York press are quoted in every port and in every capital.

Opinions is the subject of the sentence. *New York* is an adjective, modifying *press*. *Are quoted*, the predicate, is modified by the two phrases, *in port* and *in capital*.

Lesson 25.

47.—1. By the streets of *By-and-by* one arrives at the house of *Never*.

Arrives, the predicate, is modified by the phrases *by streets* and *at house*. *Streets* is modified by the phrase of *By-and-by*. *House* is modified by the phrase of *Never*. *By-and-by* and *Never* are used here as nouns.

47—2. The winds and waves are always on the side of the ablest navigators.

Winds and waves is the compound subject. *Are* is the predicate; it is modified by *always* and by the phrase *on the side*. *Side* is modified by the phrase which follows it.

48—3. The axis of the earth sticks out visibly through the centre of each and every town or city.

Sticks, the predicate, is modified by the adverb *out*; also by the phrase *through the centre*, etc. *Centre* is modified by *of town or city*, a compound phrase, in which *town* and *city* are each modified by the compound adjective element *each and every*.

48—4. The arrogant Spartan with a French-like glorification boasted for ever of little Thermopylæ.

The phrase, *with a French-like glorification*, modifies *boasted*.

48—5. The purest act of knowledge is always colored by some feeling of pleasure or pain.

The adverb *always* modifies *is colored*. *Pleasure and pain* is compound after *of*.

SANTA CLARA COUNTY
 TEACHERS' ...

48—6. The thunder of the great London journals reverberates through every clime.

The adjective *great* modifies *journals*. *Thunder* is the subject.

48—7. The cheeks of William the Testy were scorched into a dusky red by two fiery little gray eyes.

William the Testy is a complex noun. *Into red* modifies *were scorched*. *Dusky* modifies *red*, *red* being a noun. *Eyes* is modified by *two*, *fiery*, *little*, and *gray*.

48—8. The study of natural science goes hand in hand with the culture of the imagination.

Hand in hand may be taken as a complex adverb, or the phrase, expanded, may be regarded as equivalent to "(with) *hand* (placed) *in hand*."

48—9. The whole substance of the winds is drenched and bathed and washed and winnowed and sifted through and through by this baptism in the sea.

The predicate is compound. The complex adverb, *through and through*, modifies all the verbs in the predicate. The phrase, *by this baptism*, also modifies all of the verbs in the predicate.

48—10. The Arabian Empire stretched from the Atlantic to the Chinese Wall, and from the shores of the Caspian Sea to those of the Indian Ocean.

Arabian Empire is the simple subject. *And* in the second line seems to divide the phrases into pairs. *Chinese Wall*, *Caspian Sea*, and *Indian Ocean* should be regarded as complex nouns. The words *Chinese*, *Caspian*, and *Indian* are not adjectives, but each forms a part of a complex noun.

48—11. One half of all known materials consists of oxygen.

Half is the subject, modified by *one*.

48—12. The range of thirty pyramids even in the time of Abraham looked down on the plain of Memphis.

Range is the subject. *Even* modifies the phrase *in time*. *Down* modifies *looked*. *Plain* is modified by the phrase of *Memphis*.

Lesson 28.

51—5. We find the first surnames in the tenth century.

The phrase, *in the tenth century*, modifies *find*.

51—6. God tempers the wind to the shorn lamb.

The phrase, *to the shorn lamb*, modifies *tempers*.

51—7. Benjamin Franklin invented the lightning-rod.

Benjamin Franklin is the subject. *Lightning-rod* is the object complement or direct object.

51—10. Hunger rings the bell, and orders up coals in the shape of bread and butter, beef and bacon, pies and puddings.

Rings and *orders* is the compound predicate. *Up* modifies *orders*. *Coals* is the direct object of *orders*; it is modified by the phrase, *in the shape*. *Shape* is modified by the compound adjective phrase, *of bread and butter, beef and bacon, pies and puddings*.

51—11. The history of the Trojan War rests on the authority of Homer, and forms the subject of the noblest poem of antiquity.

Rests and *forms* is the compound predicate. *Subject* is the direct object of *forms*.

51—12. Every stalk, bud, flower, and seed displays a figure, a proportion, a harmony, beyond the reach of art.

The subject is compound, consisting of *stalk, bud, flower, and seed*. The object is also compound, consisting of *figure, proportion, and harmony*, all modified by the phrase, *beyond the reach*, etc.

51—13. The natives of Ceylon build houses of the trunk and thatch roofs with the leaves of the cocoa-nut palm.

Houses is the direct object, or object complement, of *build*. The compound predicate is *build* and *thatch*. The object complement of *thatch* is *roofs*. The phrase, *of the cocoa-nut palm*, modifies *trunk* and *leaves*.

51—15. Richelieu exiled the mother, oppressed the wife, degraded the brother, and banished the confessor of the king.

The predicate is compound, consisting of *exiled*, *oppressed*, *degraded*, and *banished*. The phrase, *of the king*, modifies *mother*, *wife*, *brother*, and *confessor*.

Lesson 29.

52—2. The sea is fascinating and treacherous.

The attribute, *fascinating and treacherous*, is compound.

52—3. The mountains are grand, tranquil, and lovable.

Grand, *tranquil*, and *lovable* form the compound attribute.

52—4. The Saxon words in English are simple, homely, and substantial.

Simple, *homely*, and *substantial* form the compound attribute.

53—5. The French and the Latin words in English are elegant, dignified, and artificial.

French and *Latin* modify *words*. *Elegant*, *dignified*, and *artificial* form the compound attribute after *are*.

53—6. The ear is the ever-open gateway of the soul.

Gateway, a noun, is the attribute.

53—7. The verb is the life of the sentence.

Life, a noun, is the attribute.

53—8. Good-breeding is surface-Christianity.

The noun *surface-Christianity* is the attribute.

53—9. A dainty plant is the ivy green.

NOTE.—See page 92 for this sentence.

53—10. The highest outcome of culture is simplicity.

The noun *simplicity* is the attribute.

53—11. Stillness of person and steadiness of features are signal marks of good-breeding.

Stillness and *steadiness* form the compound subject; *marks* is the attribute of the sentence.

53—12. The north wind is full of courage, and puts the stamina of endurance into a man.

Full is the attribute after *is*. *Stamina* is the object complement after *puts*. *Into man* modifies *puts*.

53—13. The west wind is hopeful, and has promise and adventure in it.

Hopeful is the attribute after *is*, and *promise* and *adventure* is the compound object complement after *has*. *In it* modifies *has*.

53—14. The east wind is peevishness and mental rheumatism and grumbling, and curls one up in the chimney-corner.

Peevishness, *rheumatism*, and *grumbling* form the attribute after *is*. The object complement of the complex verb *curls up* is *one*.

53—15. The south wind is full of longing and unrest and effeminate suggestions of luxurious ease.

Full is the attribute. It is modified by the compound phrase following.

Lesson 30.

53—2. The sun shines bright and hot at midday.

This is equivalent to *is bright and hot*; *bright* and *hot* are attributes.

53—3. Velvet feels smooth, and looks rich and glossy.

Feels and *looks* are each equivalent to *is*, hence the adjectives *smooth*, *rich*, and *glossy* are attributes.

53—4. She grew tall, queenly, and beautiful.

Grew is equivalent to *became*, hence the three adjectives are attributes.

www.libtool.com.cn

54—5. Plato and Aristotle are called the two head-springs of all philosophy.

Springs is the attribute after *are called*, a verb in the passive voice.

54—6. Under the Roman law every son was regarded as a slave.

As is an introductory conjunction. *Slave* is an attribute after *was regarded*.

54—7. He came a foe and returned a friend.

Came is equivalent to *was*; and *returned*, to *became*. *Foe* and *friend* are attributes.

54—9. This book is presented to you as a token of esteem and gratitude.

As is an introductory conjunction. *Token* is an attribute after *is presented*.

54—11. The warrior fell back on the bed a lifeless corpse.

Corpse is an attribute after *fell*, meaning *became*. *Back* modifies *fell*.

54—12. The apple tastes and smells delicious.

Delicious is the attribute after *tastes* and *smells*, each equivalent to *is*.

54—13. Lord Darnley turned out a dissolute and insolent husband.

Turned out, a complex verb, is equivalent to *became*. *Husband* is the attribute.

54—14. The brightness and freedom of the New Learning seemed incarnate in the young and scholarly Sir Thomas More.

Seemed is equivalent to *was*. *Incarnate* is the attribute.

54—15. Sir Philip Sidney lived and died the darling of the court, and the gentleman and idol of the time.

Lived and *died* are equivalent to *was*. The attributes are *darling*, *gentleman*, and *idol*.

Lesson 31.

55—2. Some one has called the eye the window of the soul.

Window is the objective complement, and forms, like the attribute, a part of the predicate. By some grammarians it is called a factitive noun. (See subject of factitives, page 19.)

55—3. Destiny had made Mr. Churchill a schoolmaster.

Schoolmaster is the objective complement.

55—4. President Hayes chose the Hon. Wm. M. Evarts Secretary of State.

Secretary of State is the objective complement, and *Hon. Wm. M. Evarts*, the object complement.

55—5. After a break of sixty years in the ducal line of the English nobility, James I. created the worthless Villiers duke of Buckingham.

Duke of Buckingham is the objective complement, and *Villiers*, the object complement.

55—6. We should consider time as a sacred trust.

Time is the object complement, and *trust* is the objective complement. *As* is an introductory conjunction.

55—7. Ophelia and Polonius thought Hamlet really insane.

Insane is the objective complement. Some authors would call it a factitive adjective. *Hamlet* is the object complement or direct object.

55—8. The President and the Senate appoint certain men ministers to foreign courts.

Ministers is an objective complement after *appoint*. *Men* is the object complement.

55—9. Shylock would have struck Jessica dead beside him.

Dead is an objective complement or factitive adjective.
Jessica is the object complement.

55—10. Custom renders the feelings blunt and callous.

NOTE.—See page 21 for this sentence.

55—11. Socrates styled beauty a short-lived tyranny.

Tyranny is the objective, and *beauty* the object complement.

55—12. Madame de Staël calls beautiful architecture frozen music.

Music is the objective, and *architecture* the object complement.

55—13. They named the state New York from the duke of York.

New York is the objective, and *state* the object complement.

55—14. Henry the Great consecrated the Edict of Nantes as the very ark of the constitution.

Henry the Great, a complex noun, is the subject of the sentence. *As* is an introductory conjunction. *Edict of Nantes* is the object complement, and *ark* the objective complement.

Lesson 33.

58—2. The best features of King James's translation of the Bible are derived from Tyndale's version.

King James's, a noun in the possessive, limits *translation*. *Tyndale's*, a noun in the possessive, limits *version*.

58—3. St. Paul the apostle was beheaded in the reign of Nero.

Apostle is in apposition with *St. Paul*.

58—5. The tadpole, or polliwog, becomes a frog.

Polliwog is in apposition with *tadpole*. *Or* is an introductory conjunction.

58—7. Mahomet, or Mohammed, was born in the year 569, and died in 632.

Mohammed is in apposition with *Mahomet*. *Or* is an introductory conjunction. *569* is in apposition with *year*.

58—f. They scaled Mont Blanc, a daring feat.

Feat is in apposition with the sentence, *They scaled Mont Blanc*.

58—9. Bees communicate to each other the death of the queen by a rapid interlacing of the antennæ.

Each is in apposition with *bees*. *Other* is in the objective after *to*.

58—10. The lamp of a man's life has three wicks—brain, blood, and breath.

Wicks is the object complement of *has*. *Brain, blood, and breath* are in apposition with *wicks*.

59—11. The turtle's back-bone and breast-bone—its shell and coat of armor—are on the outside of its body.

Back-bone and *breast-bone* is the compound subject. *Shell* and *coat* are in apposition with the subject.

59—12. Cromwell's rule as Protector began in the year 1653, and ended in 1658.

Protector is in apposition with *Cromwell's*. *As* is an introductory conjunction. *1653* is in apposition with *year*.

59—13. In the latter half of the eighteenth century three powerful nations—namely, Russia, Austria, and Prussia—united for the dismemberment of Poland.

Nations is the subject. *Russia, Austria, and Prussia* are in apposition with *nations*. *Namely* is an introductory or independent adverb. *United* is the predicate.

59—14. John, the beloved disciple, lay on his Master's breast.

Disciple is in apposition with *John*.

59—15. The petals of the daisy, *day's-eye*, close at night and in rainy weather.

Day's-eye is in apposition with *daisy*.

www.libtooc.com.cn Lesson 35.

62—2. We pay the President of the United States \$50,000 a year.

President is in the objective after *to* understood. *\$50,000* is the object complement. *Year* is in the objective after a preposition understood.

62—3. He sent his daughter home that way.

Home is an adverb; *way* is a noun in the objective after a preposition understood.

62—4. I gave him a dollar a bushel for his wheat, and ten cents a pound for his sugar.

Him and *bushel* are each in the objective after a preposition understood; so also is *pound*. *Dollar* and *cents* form the object complement of *gave*. (For) *bushel* and (for) *pound* modify *gave*.

62—5. Shakespeare was fifty-two years old the very day of his death.

Old is the attribute. *Years* and *day* are each in the objective after a preposition understood.

62—6. Serpents cast their skin once a year.

Year is in the objective after a preposition understood.

62—7. The famous Charter Oak of Hartford, Conn., fell Aug. 21, 1856.

Charter Oak, a complex noun, is the subject. *Connecticut* is in the objective after *in* understood. *Aug. 21* is in the objective after a preposition understood. *1856* is in apposition with *year* understood.

62—8. Good land should yield its owner seventy-five bushels of corn an acre.

Owner and *acre* are each in the objective after a preposition understood. (On) *acre* modifies *yield*.

62—9. On the fatal field of Zutphen, Sept. 22, 1586, his attendants brought the wounded Sir Philip Sidney a cup of cold water.

Sept. 22, 1586, and *Sir Philip Sidney* are each in the objective after a preposition understood. *1586* may also be considered in apposition with *year* understood.

62—10. He magnanimously gave a dying soldier the water. *Soldier* is in the objective after *to* understood.

62—11. The frog lives several weeks as a fish, and breathes by means of gills.

Weeks is in the objective after a preposition understood. *As* is an introductory conjunction. *Fish* is the attribute complement after *lives*.

62—12. Queen Esther asked King Ahasuerus a favor.

King Ahasuerus is in the objective after a preposition understood. *Favor* is the object complement.

62—13. Aristotle taught Alexander the Great philosophy.

Alexander the Great is in the objective after *to* understood. *Philosophy* is the object complement.

62—14. The pure attar of roses is worth twenty or thirty dollars an ounce.

Worth is the attribute. *Dollars* and *ounce* are each in the objective after a preposition understood.

62—15. Puff-balls have grown six inches in diameter in a single night.

Inches is in the objective after a preposition understood. *In diameter* and *in night* modify *have grown*.

Lesson 37.

65—2. The fat of the body is fuel laid away for use.

Laid, a participle, modifies *fuel*; *away* modifies *laid*.

65—3. The spinal marrow, proceeding from the brain, extends downward through the back-bone.

Proceeding is evidently meant to be construed as a

participle in this sentence. It seems rather to be a participial noun following a preposition understood, the phrase making an adverbial element and modifying *extends*.

65—4. Van Twiller sat in a huge chair of solid oak, hewn in the celebrated forest of the Hague.

NOTE.—See page 27 for the analysis of this sentence.

65—5. Lentulus, returning with victorious legions, had amused the populace with the sports of the amphitheatre.

Returning seems to follow a preposition understood, the phrase modifying *had amused*, adverbially. Some grammarians would call it a participle, but it does not convey an adjective idea.

65—6. The natives came crowding around.

Came crowding is equivalent to *were crowding*. *Around* modifies *crowding*.

65—7. The city lies sleeping.

Lies sleeping is equivalent to *is sleeping*.

65—8. They stood terrified.

Stood terrified is equivalent to *were terrified*.

65—9. The philosopher sat buried in thought.

Sat buried is equivalent to *was buried*.

65—10. The old miser kept grubbing and saving and starving.

Kept is here equivalent to *was*. The participles *grubbing*, *saving*, and *starving* are attributes.

65—11. He kept me waiting.

Waiting is an objective complement or factitive participle.

65—12. I found my book growing dull.

Growing dull is the objective complement or factitive participle.

66—13. He owned himself defeated.

Defeated is the objective complement.

66—14. No one ever saw fat men heading a riot or herding together in turbulent mobs.

Heading and *herding* are objective complements. *Riot* is the direct object of *heading*. *Together*, an adverb, modifies *herding*. *Men* is the direct object of *saw*.

66—15. I felt my heart beating faster.

Beating is an adjective complement, modified by the adverb *faster*. *Heart* is the object complement of *felt beating*.

66—16. You may imagine me sitting there.

Sitting is the objective complement. The predicate is *may imagine sitting*. *Me* is the object complement.

66—17. Saul, seeking his father's asses, found himself suddenly turned into a king.

The comma after *Saul* changes *seeking*, etc. to an adverbial modifier, equivalent to (*while he was*) *seeking*, etc.; or it might be construed *on seeking*, etc., but the clause is preferable. *Turned* is an objective complement. *Himself* is the object complement.

Lesson 38.

67—2. Portions of the brain may be cut off without producing any pain.

Producing is in the objective after *without*. *Cut off* is a complex verb = *severed*.

67—5. You cannot fully sympathize with suffering without having suffered.

Suffering is in the objective after *with*; *having suffered* is a participle, used as a noun in the objective after *without*.

67—7. We should avoid injuring the feelings of others.

Injuring is a participle, used as a noun after *avoid*.

67—8. My going there will depend upon my father's giving his consent.

Going is a participle, used as a noun in the nominative. *Giving* is a participle, used as a noun in the objective after *upon*.

67—9. Good reading aloud is a rare accomplishment.

Reading is the subject of the sentence. *Aloud* is an adverb, modifying *reading*.

67—10. The cackling of geese saved Rome.

Cackling, the subject, is a participial noun.

67—11. Such was the exciting campaign, celebrated in many a long-forgotten song.

Exciting modifies *campaign*. *Celebrated*, a participle, also modifies *campaign*.

67—12. All silencing of discussion is an assumption of infallibility.

Silencing is used as the subject.

67—18. He was a squeezing, grasping, hardened old sinner.

Squeezing, *grasping*, and *hardened* are participial adjectives, modifying *sinner*.

68—14. The bridge at Ashtabula giving way, the train fell into the river.

Giving way is a complex participle, modifying *bridge*. Properly, the participle should read *having given way*.

68—15. Jesus having turned and spoken to Mary, she recognized him.

Jesus is in the nominative absolute before the participles *having turned* and (having) *spoken*, each of which is modified by the phrase *to Mary*.

68—16. Talking of exercise, you have heard, of course, of Dickens's "constitutionals."

This is probably *We talking of exercise*, and is independent in construction.

Lesson 40.

70—2. Richelieu's title to command rested on sublime force of will and decision of character.

To command modifies *title*.

70—3. Many of the attempts to assassinate William the Silent were defeated.

To assassinate modifies *attempts*.

70—4. We will strive to please you.

To please modifies *will strive*, adverbially.

70—5. Ingenious Art steps forth to fashion and refine the race.

To fashion and *(to) refine* are adverbial modifiers of *steps forth*. *Steps forth* may be regarded as a complex verb = *advances*.

70—6. These harmless delusions tend to make us happy.

To make modifies *tend*. *Happy* is an objective complement after *to make*.

70—7. Wounds made by words are hard to heal.

Made modifies *wounds*. *To heal* modifies the adjective *hard*.

70—8. The representative Yankee, selling his farm, wanders away to seek new lands, to clear new cornfields, to build another shingle palace, and again to sell off and wander.

A preposition, probably *after*, is understood before *selling*. (After) *selling* modifies *wanders*. *To seek*, *to clear*, *to build*, *to sell*, and *(to) wander* also modify *wanders*. *Again* modifies *to sell* and *(to) wander*.

71—9. These apples are not ripe enough to eat.

Enough modifies *ripe*, and *to eat* = *to be eaten*, modifies *enough*.

71—11. To bear our fate is to conquer it.

To bear is the subject, and *is to conquer* the predicate, of the sentence.

71—12. To be entirely just in our estimate of others is impossible.

To be just is the subject.

71—13. The noblest vengeance is to forgive.

Is to forgive is the predicate, *to forgive* being the attribute.

71—14. He seemed to be innocent.

Seemed to be innocent is the predicate. *To be innocent* = *innocent*, being the attribute.

71—15. The blind men's dogs appeared to know him.

Appeared to know is the predicate. *To know* is the infinitive attribute.

71—16. We should learn to govern ourselves.

To govern is the object complement of *should learn*.

71—17. Each hill attempts to ape her voice.

To ape is the object complement of *attempts*.

Lesson 41.

72—2. Paul was now about to open his mouth.

The attribute is the phrase *about to open*. *Now* modifies *to open*.

72—3. No way remains but to go on.

The phrase *but to go* modifies *way*, *but* being a preposition.

72—5. God never made his works for man to mend.

The phrase *for man to mend* modifies *made*. It is

equivalent to *for man's mending*, which is equivalent to *for mending by man*. This, in turn, is equivalent to *for to be mended by man*, and this last phrase is equivalent to the phrase *for to mend by man*, in which *for to* is the old form of *to* used as the sign of the infinitive. The following are similar examples of this use of *for to*:

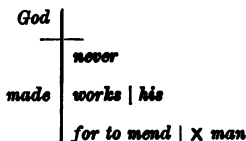
What went ye out *for to* see?

He will not suffer my people *for to* pass.

The night is too dark *for us to* travel.

He belonged to a race that was too much detested for him to hope anything from charity.

The sentence 72—5 may be illustrated in diagram as follows:



72—6. For a man to be proud of his learning is the greatest ignorance.

NOTE.—See page 25 for one form of the diagram of this sentence.

This will probably bear the same construction as the preceding sentence. If so, *for to be proud* is the subject.

72—7. It is easy to find fault.

NOTE.—See page 25 for the diagram of this sentence.

72—8. It is not the way to argue down a vice to tell lies about it.

The phrase, *to tell lies about it*, modifies the subject *it*. *To argue* modifies *way*.

72—9. It is natural to man to indulge in the illusions of hope.

To indulge, etc. modifies the subject *it*.

72—10. It is not all of life to live.

To live modifies the subject *it*.

72—11. ~~This task, to teach the young~~, may become delightful.

To teach modifies the subject *task*.

72—12. He made me wait.

(*To*) *wait* is a factitive infinitive or objective complement. *Made (to) wait = detained*.

73—13. We found the report to be true.

To be true is the objective complement.

73—14. He commanded the bridge to be lowered.

To be lowered is the objective complement.

73—15. I saw the leaves stir.

(*To*) *stir* is the objective complement.

73—16. Bishop Jewel pronounced the clerical garb to be a stage dress.

To be dress is the objective complement.

Lesson 42.

73—1. England's debt, to put it in round numbers, is \$4,000,000,000.

To put, etc. is independent in construction. *Is \$* (dollars) is the predicate. (*Dollars*) is modified by *4,000,000,000*.

73—2. Every object has several faces, so to speak.

NOTE.—See page 24 for the analysis of this sentence.

73—3. To make a long story short, Louis XVI. and Marie Antoinette were executed.

To make a long story short is independent. *Short* is an objective complement.

74—4. It is a good thing to give thanks unto the Lord.

To give thanks, etc. modifies the subject *it*.

74—5. We require clothing in the summer to protect the body from the heat of the sun.

To protect, etc. modifies *require*.

74—6. Rip Van Winkle could not account for everything's having changed so.

Having changed is a participle, used as a noun in the objective; it is modified by *everything's* in the possessive.

74—7. This sentence is not too difficult for me to analyze.

The phrase, *for me to analyze*, modifies *difficult*; *to analyze* modifies *too*.

74—8. The fog came pouring in at every chink and keyhole.

Came pouring = *was pouring*. The adverb *in* modifies *pouring*.

74—9. Conscience, her first law broken, wounded lies.

Her first law broken is independent in construction. *Wounded lies* = *is wounded*.

74—10. To be, or not to be—that is the question.

NOTE.—See page 105 for the discussion of this sentence.

74—11. I supposed him to be a gentleman.

To be gentleman is an objective complement.

74—12. Food, keeping the body in health by making it warm and repairing its waste, is a necessity.

A preposition is understood before *keeping*. The phrase (by) *keeping* modifies *is*. *In health* is an objective complement after *keeping*. *By making* and (by) *repairing* modify *keeping*. *Warm* is an objective complement after *making*.

74—13. I will teach you the trick to prevent your being cheated another time.

To prevent modifies *will teach*. *You* is in the objective after a preposition understood. *Being cheated* is the direct object of *to prevent*. *At* is understood before *another*.

74—14. She threatened to go beyond the sea, to throw herself out of the window, to drown herself.

To go, to throw, and to drown are all object complements of *threatened*.

74—15. Busied with public affairs, the council would sit for hours smoking and watching the smoke curl from their pipes to the ceiling.

Busied modifies *council*. *Smoking* and *watching* are participial attributes. *Smoke* is the direct object of *watching*. (*To*) *curl* modifies *smoke*.

Lesson 44.

76—1. The loveliest things in life, Tom, are but shadows.

Tom is independent by address. *But* is an adverb, in the sense of *only*, modifying *are*. It may also be regarded as an adjective in the sense of *mere*.

76—2. There are one-story intellects¹, two-story intellects², and three-story intellects³ with skylights.

There is an independent adverb. *Intellects*¹, *intellects*², and *intellects*³ is the compound subject. *One-story* is a compound adjective; so also are *two-story* and *three-story*.

76—3. Ah! then and there was hurrying to and fro.

Hurrying is the subject. *Then* and *there*, adverbs, modify *was*. *To and fro*, a complex adverb, modifies *hurrying*.

76—4. Hope lost, all is lost.

Hope (being) *lost* is independent.

76—5. The smith, a mighty man is he.

Smith is in the nominative independent by pleonasm

76—6. Why, this is not revenge.

76—7. Well, this is the forest of Arden.

Why and *well* are independent adverbs.

76—8. Now, there is at Jerusalem, by the sheep-market, a pool.
Now and *there* are independent adverbs. See page 40
 for the analysis of the sentence.

76—9. To speak plainly, your habits are your worst enemies.
To speak plainly is used independently.

76—10. No accident occurring, we shall arrive to-morrow.
No accident occurring is independent.

76—11. The teacher being sick, there was no school Friday.
The teacher being sick is independent. *There* is an independent adverb. *Friday* is in the objective after *on* understood.

76—12. Mr. President, I shall enter on no encomium upon Massachusetts.

Mr. President is in the nominative independent by address.

77—13. Properly speaking, there can be no chance in our affairs.

Properly speaking is independent. *There* is an independent adverb.

77—14. But the enemies of tyranny,—their path leads to the scaffold.

But is an introductory conjunction. *The enemies of tyranny* is independent in construction.

77—15. She (oh, the artfulness of the woman!) managed the matter extremely well.

Oh is an interjection. *The artfulness of the woman* is independent by exclamation.

77—16. A day later (Oct. 19, 1812) began the fatal retreat of the Grand Army from Moscow.

Day is in the objective after a preposition understood. *Oct. 19, 1812*, is in apposition with *day*. *Later* modifies the noun *day*. *From Moscow* modifies *retreat*.

Lesson 46.

79—1. There are no accidents in the providence of God.

There is an independent adverb. The phrase *in the providence, etc.* modifies *are*.

79—2. Why does the very murderer, his victim sleeping before him, and his glaring eye taking the measure of the blow, strike wide of the mortal part?

Victim and *eye* are each in the nominative absolute before a participle. *Sleeping* modifies *victim* and *taking* modifies *eye*. *Wide* is an adverb, modifying *strike*; it is modified by the phrase, *of the mortal part*. All following *murderer* and preceding *strike* is independent in construction.

79—3. Suffer not yourselves to be betrayed with a kiss.

To be betrayed is an objective complement.

79—4. How wonderful is the advent of spring!

How modifies wonderful. *Advent* is the subject.

79—5. Oh! a dainty plant is the ivy green.

NOTE.—See page 92 for this sentence.

79—6. Six days shalt thou labor and do all thy work.

Days is in the objective after a preposition understood, with which it modifies *shalt labor*. The predicate of the sentence is *shalt labor* and (*shalt*) *do*.

79—7. Alexander the Great died at Babylon in the thirty-third year of his age.

Alexander the Great is the simple subject.

79—8. How sickness enlarges the dimensions of a man's self to himself!

Enlarges is the predicate. *Dimensions* is the object complement. *Of self* modifies *dimensions*. *To himself* modifies *enlarges*.

79—9. Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain.

God is in apposition with *Lord*. *In vain* modifies *shalt take*. www.libtool.com.cn

79—10. Lend me your ears.

Me is the indirect and *ears*, the direct object.

79—11. What brilliant rings the planet Saturn has!

What is an adjective, modifying *rings*. *Saturn* is in apposition with *planet*.

79—12. What power shall blanch the sullied snow of character?

What is an adjective, modifying *power*. *Snow* is the object complement.

79—13. The laws of nature are the thoughts of God.

Thoughts is the attribute complement.

79—14. How beautiful was the snow, falling all day long, all night long, on the roofs of the living, on the graves of the dead!

Falling modifies *snow*. *Day* and *night* follow prepositions understood. *All* and *long* modify *day* and *night*. *Living* and *dead* are in the objective after *of*.

79—15. Who, in the darkest days of our Revolution, carried your flag into the very chops of the British Channel, bearded the lion in his den, and woke the echoes of old Albion's hills by the thunders of his cannon and the shouts of his triumph?

The predicate is compound, consisting of *carried*, *bearded*, and *woke*. All these verbs are modified by the phrase *in the darkest days*, etc. *Woke* is modified by the compound phrase, *by the thunders*, etc., *thunders* and *shouts* being the basis of the phrase. *Echoes* is the object complement of *woke*.

Lesson 47.

79—1. My having in Sanscrit, like Orlando's beard, is a younger brother's revenue.

Having is here used as a noun. It is the subject of

the sentence. *Like* is an adjective referring to *having*. *Beard* is in the objective after a preposition understood. *Is revenue* is the predicate.

www.libtool.com.cn

79—2. Refusing to bare his head to any earthly potentate, Richelieu would permit no eminent author to stand bareheaded in his presence.

Refusing modifies the subject, *Richelieu*. *To bare* is the object complement of *refusing*. *To stand* is the objective complement after *would permit*.

80—8. The queen of England is simply a piece of historic heraldry; a flag, floating grandly over a Liberal ministry yesterday, over a Tory ministry to-day.

Queen of England is the subject. *Is piece* and (is) *flag* is the predicate; or *flag* may be taken in apposition with *piece*. *Floating* modifies *flag*.

80—4. The vulgar intellectual palate hankers after the titillation of foaming phrase.

Vulgar and *intellectual* modify *palate*.

80—5. Two mighty vortices, Pericles and Alexander the Great, drew into strong eddies about themselves all the glory and the pomp of Greek literature, Greek eloquence, Greek wisdom, Greek art.

Pericles and *Alexander the Great* are in apposition with *vortices*, the subject. *Glory* and *pomp* are object complements. The compound phrase, *of Greek literature*, etc., modifies *glory* and *pomp*. *About themselves* modifies *drew*.

80—6. Reason's whole pleasure, all the joys of sense lie in three words—health, peace and competence.

Pleasure and *joys* form the compound subject. *In words* modifies *lie*. *Health*, *peace*, and *competence* are in apposition with *words*.

80—7. Extreme admiration puts out the critic's eye.

Puts out, a complex verb, is the predicate.

80—8. The setting of a great hope is like the setting of the sun.

Like is an adjective. *Setting* is in the objective after a preposition understood.

80—9. Things mean, the Thistle, the Leek, the Broom of the Plantagenets, become noble by association.

Things is the subject. *Thistle*, *Leek*, and *Broom* are in apposition with *things*. *Become noble* is the predicate. *Mean* is an adjective, modifying things.

80—10. Prayer is the key of the morning and the bolt of the night.

Key and *bolt* is the compound attribute.

80—11. In that calm Syrian afternoon, memory, a pensive Ruth, went gleaned the silent fields of childhood, and found the scattered grain still golden, and the morning sunlight fresh and fair.

Memory is the subject. *Ruth* is in apposition with *memory*. *Went gleaned* and *found* are the predicates. *Went gleaned* = *was gleaned*. *Grain* is the object complement of *found*. *Golden* is an objective complement. *Fresh* and *fair* are also objective complements after *found*. *Sunlight* is an object complement.

Lesson 49.

80—1. By means of steam man realizes the fable of Æolus's bag, and carries the two and thirty winds in the boiler of his boat.

Fable is the object complement of *realizes*. *Realizes* and *carries* is the compound predicate. *Two and thirty* modifies *winds*.

80—2. The Angel of Life winds our brains up once for all, then closes the case, and gives the key into the hands of the Angel of Resurrection.

Angel of Life is the subject. The compound predicate

is *winds up*, *closes*, and *gives*. *Angel of Resurrection* is a complex noun. *For all* is an adverbial modifier of *winds*.

www.libtool.com.cn

80—3. I called the new world into existence to redress the balance of the Old.

To redress modifies *called*. *New world* is the object complement. *Old* may be regarded as a noun. It is equivalent to *Old World*.

80—4. The prominent nose of the New Englander is evidence of the constant linguistic exercise of that organ.

Evidence is an attribute complement.

81—5. Every Latin word has its function as noun or verb or adverb ticketed upon it.

As is an introductory conjunction; *noun*, *verb*, and *adverb*, are in apposition with *function*. *Ticketed* is a participle, modifying *function*. Some consider *ticketed* an objective complement.

81—6. The Alps, piled in cold and still sublimity, are an image of despotism.

Piled is a participle, modifying *Alps*. *Are image* is the predicate.

81—7. I want my husband to be submissive without looking so.

To be submissive is an objective complement, referring to *husband*. *Without looking so* modifies *be*.

81—8. I love to lose myself in other men's minds.

To lose is the object complement. The phrase, *in other*, etc., modifies *to lose*.

80—9. Cheerfulness banishes all anxious care and discontent, soothes and composes the passions, and keeps the soul in a perpetual calm.

The compound predicate is *banishes*, *soothes*, *composes*, and *keeps*. *In a perpetual calm* modifies *keeps*.

81—10. To discover the true nature of comets has hitherto proved beyond the power of science.

To discover is the subject. *Hitherto* modifies the predicate *has proved*. *Beyond the power of science* is an attribute phrase.

81—11. Authors must not, like Chinese soldiers, expect to win victories by turning somersets in the air.

To win is the object complement after *expect*. *By turning*, etc. modifies *win*. *Like* is a conjunctive adverb. *Soldiers* is in the nominative to a verb (*do*) understood. The clause introduced by *like* modifies *must expect*.

Lesson 59.

95—2. The lever which moves the world of mind is the printing press.

NOTE.—See page 29 for the analysis of this sentence.

95—3. Wine makes the face of him who drinks it to excess blush for his habits.

The clause, *who drinks*, etc., modifies *him*. (*To*) *blush* is an objective complement after *makes*. *To excess* modifies *drinks*.

96—4. Photography is the art which enables common-place mediocrity to look like genius.

Which enables, etc. modifies *art*. *To look* is an objective complement after *enables*. *Like* is an adjective, modifying *mediocrity*. *Genius* is in the objective after a preposition understood.

96—5. In 1685, Louis XIV. signed the ordinance that revoked the Edict of Nantes.

In 1685 modifies *signed*. *That revoked*, etc. modifies *ordinance*.

96—6. The thirteen colonies were welded together by the measures which Samuel Adams framed.

NOTE.—See page 80 for the analysis of this sentence.

96—7. The guilt of the slave-trade, which sprang out of the traffic with Guinea, rests with John Hawkins.

Which sprang, etc. modifies *slave-trade*.

96—8. I found the place to which you referred.

You referred to which modifies *place*.

96—9. The spirit in which we act is the highest matter.

In which modifies *act*; the subordinate clause modifies *spirit*. *Is matter* is the predicate of the main clause.

96—10. It was the same book that I referred to.

That is in the objective after *to*. The clause, *that I referred to*, modifies *book*.

96—11. She that I spoke to was blind.

That I spoke to modifies *she*. *To that* modifies *spoke*.

96—12. Grouchy did not arrive at the time that Napoleon most needed him.

(*In*) *that Napoleon most needed him* modifies *time*. *In* is understood before *that = which*. The phrase (*in*) *that* modifies *needed*.

96—13. Attention is the stuff that memory is made of.

That memory is made of modifies *stuff*. *Of that* modifies *made*.

96—14. It is to you that I speak.

That I speak to modifies *it*. *To that* modifies *speak*.

96—15. It was from me that he received the information.

It, the subject, is modified by the explanatory clause, *he received the information from that*. When *from* takes its natural position *I* must be substituted for *me*.

96—16. Islands are the tops of mountains whose base is in the bed of the ocean.

Whose base, etc. modifies *mountains*. *In bed* modifies *is*.

96—17. Unhappy is the man whose mother does not make all mothers interesting.

Whose mother, etc. modifies *man*. *Is unhappy* is the predicate of the main clause. *Interesting* is a factitive or objective complement, after *make*.

Lesson 60.

97—1. Trillions of waves of ether enter the eye and hit the retina in the time you take to breathe.

Trillions is the subject; *enter* and *hit* is the compound predicate. Both verbs are modified by the phrase *in time*. *Time* is modified by the clause, (that) *you take to breathe*. *To breathe* modifies *take*, adverbially.

97—2. The *smith* takes his name from his *smoothing* the metals he works on.

Smoothing is a participle used as a noun, in the objective after *from*. *Metals* is in the objective after *smoothing*, used as a participle. *Which* is understood after *on* (on which he works).

97—3. Socrates was one of the greatest sages the world ever saw.

Was one is the predicate. *One* is modified by *of sages*. The clause, (that) *the world ever saw*, modifies *sages*.

97—4. Whom the Lord loveth he chasteneth.

He chasteneth is the main clause; *chasteneth* is modified by the clause, *the Lord loveth whom*.

97—5. He did what was right.

NOTE.—See page 31 for this sentence.

97—6. What is false in this world below betrays itself in a love of show.

The subject of *betrays*, the predicate of the main clause, is *that* (a part of *what*, which is the subject of both *betrays* and *is*). The subordinate clause, *what is false in this world*, modifies the subject of the main clause. *Below* is an adjective, modifying *world*.

97—7. The swan achieved what the goose conceived.

What has a double construction ; it is in the objective after both *achieved* and *conceived*.

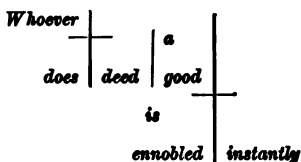
www.libtool.com.cn

97—8. What men he had were true.

What is used both as an adjective to limit *men* and as a pronoun in the objective after *had*. It is equivalent to *those which*.

98—9. Whoever does a good deed is instantly ennobled.

Whoever is subject of the subordinate clause. This whole clause is subject of *is ennobled*. The following diagram illustrates the analysis :



98—10. I told him to bring whichever was the lightest.

Him is in the objective after a preposition understood. *To bring* is the object complement of *told*. *Whichever was the lightest* is the object complement of *bring*.

98—11. Whatever crushes individuality is despotism.

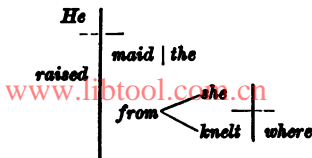
Whatever crushes individuality is the subject of the main clause.

98—12. A dépôt is a place where stores are deposited.

Place is an attribute. It is modified by the clause, *stores are deposited where*.

98—13. He raised the maid from where she knelt.

The object of *from* is the clause, *where she knelt*. The diagram may be as follows :



98—14. Youth is the time when the seeds of character are sown.

Time is modified by the clause that follows. *When* modifies *sown*.

98—15. Shylock would give the duke no reason why he followed a losing suit against Antonio.

Duke is the object of a preposition understood. *Reason* is modified by the clause, *why he followed*, etc. *Why* modifies *followed*.

98—16. Mark the majestic simplicity of those laws whereby the operations of the universe are conducted.

Laws is modified by the clause that follows. *Whereby* modifies *are conducted*.

Lesson 63.

101—2. While Louis XIV. reigned, Europe was at war.

The clause, *while Louis XIV. reigned*, modifies *war*.

101—3. When my father and my mother forsake me, then the Lord will take me up.

The second is the main clause. *Then*, an adverb, modifies *will take*. *Then* is modified by the subordinate clause, *When my father and my mother forsake me*.

101—4. Cato, before he durst give himself the fatal stroke, spent the night in reading "Plato's Immortality."

In reading modifies *spent*. *Plato's Immortality* is the object complement of *reading*. *Spent* is modified also by the clause, *before he durst*, etc. (To) *give* modifies *durst*. *Himself* is the object of a preposition understood.

101—5. Many a year is in its grave since I crossed this restless wave.

Many a, a complex adjective, modifies *year*. The subordinate clause, *since I crossed*, etc., modifies *is*.

101—6. Where the snow falls, there is freedom.

The main clause is *Freedom is there*. *There* is modified by the subordinate clause, *Where the snow falls*.

101—7. Pope skimmed the cream of good sense and expression wherever he could find it.

The subordinate clause, *wherever*, etc., modifies *skimmed*. *Wherever* is a conjunctive adverb. *Good* modifies both *sense* and *expression*.

102—8. The wind bloweth where it listeth.

Where it listeth modifies *bloweth*.

102—9. Washington was as¹ good as² he was great.

*As*¹ is an adverb, modifying *good*; *as*² is a conjunctive adverb, introducing the clause, *as he was great*, which modifies *as*¹.

102—10. The wiser he grew, the humbler he became.

The, an adverb, modifies *humbler* in the main clause. In the subordinate clause the adverb *the* modifies *wiser*.

102—12. To be right is better than to be President.

To be right is the subject, *right* being an abstract adjective after *to be*. The clause, *than to be President* (would be good) modifies *better*.

102—13. It was so cold that the mercury froze.

So modifies *cold*, and is modified by the clause, *that the mercury froze*, *that* being a subordinate conjunction.

102—14. It was so cold as to freeze the mercury.

So modifies *cold*, and is modified by the clause *as to freeze the mercury* (would require).

102—15. Dying for a principle is a higher degree of virtue than scolding for it.

Dying is the subject of the main clause. *Is degree* is the predicate. *Higher* is modified by the clause, *than scolding for it* (is high).

102—16. He called so loud that all the hollow deep of hell resounded.

Loud is an adverb, modifying *called*. *So* modifies *loud*. The clause, *that all the hollow deep, etc.*, modifies *so*.

102—17. To preach is easier than to practise.

Of the subordinate clause *to practise* is the subject, and *is easy* understood is the predicate.

102—18. One's breeding shows itself nowhere more than in his religion.

More modifies *shows*, and is modified by the clause, *than* (it shows itself) *in his religion*. *More* and *than* are correlatives.

Lesson 64.

103—1. He died as he lived.

As he lived modifies *died*.

103—3. As the upright man thinks, so he speaks.

The first clause modifies *so* in the second, *as* being the connective.

103—4. As is the boy, so will be the man.

As is the boy, the subordinate clause, modifies *so*. *So* is the correlative of *as*, and modifies *will be*.

103—5. The waves of conversation roll and shape our thoughts as the surf rolls and shapes the pebbles on the shore.

The clause introduced by *as* modifies *roll* and *shape*.

103—7. Slang is always vulgar, as it is an affected way of talking.

The clause, *as it is, etc.*, modifies *is*.

104—8. We should keep the pores of the skin open, for through them the blood throws off its impurities.

The predicate of the main clause is *should keep open*, of which *open* is a factitive or objective complement. The subordinate clause introduced by *for* modifies *should keep open*.

104—9. Since the breath contains poisonous carbonic acid, our sleeping rooms should be well ventilated.

The clause, *since the breath*, etc., modifies *should be ventilated*.

104—10. Sea-bathing is the most healthful kind of washing, as it combines fresh air and vigorous exercise with its other benefits.

The clause, *as it combines*, etc., modifies *is* in the main clause.

104—11. Wheat is the most valuable of grains, because bread is made from its flour.

The clause introduced by *because* modifies *is*.

104—12. God was angry with the children of Israel, for he overthrew them in the wilderness.

The clause, *for he overthrew*, etc., modifies *was*.

104—13. Tobacco and the potato are American products, since Raleigh found them here.

The clause introduced by *since* modifies *are*.

104—14. It rained last night, because the ground is wet this morning.

The clause, *because the ground is wet*, etc., modifies *rained*.

104—15. We Americans are all cuckoos, for we build our homes in the nests of other birds.

The clause, *for we build*, etc., modifies *are*. *Americans* and *all* are in apposition with *we*, the subject.

Lesson 65.

105—1. If the air is quickly compressed, enough heat is evolved to produce combustion.

To produce modifies *enough*, and *enough* modifies *heat*. The cause, *If the air, etc.*, modifies *is evolved*.

105—2. Unless your thought packs easily and neatly in verse, always use prose.

The subject of the main clause is understood. *Use* is the predicate. The clause, *unless your thoughts, etc.*, modifies *use*.

105—3. If you ever saw a crow with a king-bird after him, you have an image of a dull speaker and a lively listener.

The clause, *if you ever saw, etc.*, modifies *have* in the main clause. *With a king-bird* modifies *crow*. *After him* modifies *flying* understood.

105—4. Were it not for the warm waters of the Gulf Stream, the harbors and the rivers of Britain would be blocked up with ice for a great part of the year.

Where the verb precedes the subject *it*, the introductory conjunction *if* may be omitted. The subordinate clause, *Were it not, etc.*, modifies the complex verb, *would be blocked up*.

105—5. Should the calls of hunger be neglected, the fat of the body is thrown into the grate to keep the furnace in play.

Should the calls, etc. modifies *is thrown*, in the main clause. *To keep* also modifies *is thrown*.

105—6. Language was given us that we might say pleasant things to each other.

The clause introduced by *that* modifies *was given*. *Each* is in apposition with *we*.

105—7. Spiders have eyes all over their heads, in order that they may see in many directions at one time.

All, an adverb, modifies the phrase, *over heads*. The clause introduced by *in order that* modifies *have*.

SARAH CLARA CUTLER

105—8. The ship-canal across the Isthmus of Suez was dug so that European vessels need not sail around the Cape of Good Hope to reach the Orient.

The clause introduced by *so that* modifies *was dug*. *Need sail* is the predicate of the subordinate clause. *To reach the Orient* modifies *sail*.

105—9. The air draws up vapors from the sea and the land, and retains them dissolved in itself or suspended in cisterns of clouds, that it may drop them as rain or dew upon the thirsty earth.

Up, an adverb, modifies *draws*. *Land* is in the objective after a preposition understood. *Dissolved* and *suspended* are objective complements, being factitive participles referring to *them*. *As* is an introductory conjunction, introducing the appositive elements *rain* and *dew*. The clause introduced by *that* modifies *draws* and *retains*.

105—10. Although the brain is only one-fortieth of the body, about one-sixth of the blood is sent to it.

In the principal clause, *about* modifies the subject *one-fourth*. The clause, *Although the brain, etc.*, modifies *is sent*. *Only* modifies *one-fortieth*.

106—11. Though the atmosphere presses on us with a load of fifteen pounds on every square inch of surface, still we do not feel its weight.

In the principal clause, *still* modifies *do feel*, the predicate. The subordinate clause, *though the atmosphere, etc.*, modifies *do feel*. *On every square inch, etc.* modifies *presses*.

106—12. Though thou shouldst bray a fool in a mortar, yet will not his foolishness depart from him.

The clause, *though thou shouldst bray, etc.*, modifies *will depart*, in the principal clause. *Yet* modifies *will depart*. *Though* and *yet* are correlatives.

106—13. If the War of Roses did not utterly destroy English freedom, it arrested its progress for a hundred years.

In the principal clause, *a hundred* modifies *years* as a complex adjective. The clause introduced by *if* modifies *arrested*. *War of Roses* is the subject of the subordinate clause.

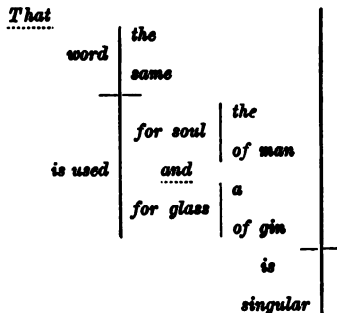
106—14. Though many rivers flow into the Mediterranean, they are not sufficient to make up for the loss caused by evaporation.

Are sufficient is the predicate of the main clause. *To make up*, a complex verb, modifies *sufficient*. *Caused*, etc. modifies *loss*. The subordinate clause, *though many rivers*, etc., modifies *are*.

Lesson 71.

111—2. That the same word is used for the soul of man and for a glass of gin is singular.

That is an introductory conjunction. The whole clause, including the word *gin*, is the subject of the sentence. The analysis may be represented as follows :



111—8. "What have I done?" is asked by the knave and the thief.

The clause, *What have I done*, is subject of the sentence. *By* is understood before *thief*.

111—4. Who was the discoverer of America is not yet fully determined by historians.

The subject of the sentence is the clause, *Who was the discoverer of America.*

111—5. When letters were first used is not certainly known.

The subject clause is, *When letters were first used.*

111—6. "Where is Abel, thy brother?" smote the ears of the guilty Cain.

NOTE.—See page 84 for the analysis of this sentence.

111—7. When to quit business and enjoy their wealth is a problem never solved by some.

The subject clause is, *When to quit business and enjoy their wealth.* *Solved* is a participle, modifying *problem.*

111—9. The Esquimau feels intuitively that bear's grease and blubber are the dishes for his table.

The object complement is the clause, *that bear's grease and blubber are the dishes for his table.*

112—10. The world will not anxiously inquire who you are.

Who you are is the object complement.

112—11. It will ask of you, "What can you do?"

What can you do is the object complement.

112—12. The peacock struts about, saying, "What a fine tail I have!"

What a fine tail I have is the object complement of *saying.* *Saying* modifies *peacock.*

112—13. He does not know which to choose.

Which to choose is the object complement of *know.* *Which* is the object complement of *to choose.*

112—14. No one can tell how or when or where he will die.

How or when or where he will die is the object complement of *can tell.*

112—15. Philosophers are still debating whether the will has any control over the current of thought in our dreams.

The object complement is all that follows *debating*. *Whether*, a conjunction, introduces the subordinate clause.

Lesson 72.

112—1. A peculiarity of English is, that it has so many borrowed words.

The clause, *that it has so many borrowed words*, is the attribute complement after *is*.

NOTE. For form of diagram see lower half of page 34.

112—2. Tweed's defiant question was, "What are you going to do about it?"

All that follows *was* is the attribute. *To do* modifies *are going*.

112—3. The question ever asked and never answered is, "Where and how am I to exist in the hereafter?"

All that follows *is* is the attribute. *Am to exist* is the predicate of the subordinate clause.

112—4. Hamlet's exclamation was, "What a piece of work is man!"

NOTE.—See same sentence, page 34.

112—5. The myth concerning Achilles is, that he was invulnerable in every part except the heel.

Concerning Achilles modifies *myth*, *concerning* being a preposition. What follows *is* is the attribute of the main predicate.

112—6. It has been proved that the earth is round.

That the earth is round modifies the subject *it*. See page 35 for diagram.

112—7. It is believed that sleep is caused by a diminution in the supply of blood to the brain.

All that follows *believed* modifies *it*, the subject.

112—8. The fact that mould, mildew, and yeast are plants is wonderful.

The clause, *that mould, mildew, and yeast are plants*, modifies the subject, *fact*.

113—9. Napoleon turned his Simplon road aside in order that he might save a tree mentioned by Cæsar.

The clause, *in order that he might*, etc., modifies *turned*. *Aside* also modifies *turned*. *Mentioned* modifies *tree*. *In order that* is a complex conjunction.

113—10. Shakespeare's metaphor, "Night's candles are burnt out," is one of the finest in literature.

NOTE.—See page 35 for the same sentence.

113—11. The shortest and sweetest verse in the Bible is this: "Jesus wept."

Jesus wept is in apposition with *this*.

113—12. This we know, that our future depends on our present.

All that follows *know* is in apposition with *this*. *Future* and *present* are both nouns.

113—13. Have birds any sense of why they sing?

Sense is modified by the phrase, *of they sing why*, in which the basis is a clause.

113—14. There has been some dispute about who wrote "Shakespeare's Plays."

There is an independent adverb. *Dispute* is modified by the explanatory phrase, *about who wrote Shakespeare's plays*.

113—15. We are not certain that an open sea surrounds the Pole.

Certain is modified adverbially by the clause, *that an open sea*, etc.

118—16. We are all anxious that the future shall bring us success and triumph.

Anxious is modified adverbially by the clause following that word. www.libtool.com.cn

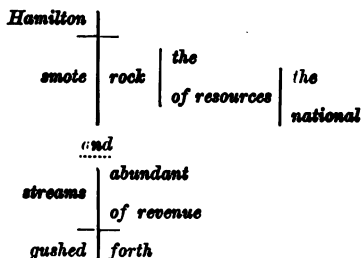
118—17. The Sandwich Islander is confident that the strength and valor of his slain enemy passes into himself.

Confident is modified by the clause that follows.

Lesson 76.

119—2. Hamilton smote the rock of the national resources, and abundant streams of revenue gushed forth.

The sentence is compound. It may be illustrated as follows:



119—3. Some are born great, some achieve greatness, and some have greatness thrust upon them.

In the last member, *thrust* is an objective complement after *have*.

119—5. Put not your trust in money, but put your money in trust.

NOTE.—See page 37 for the same sentence.

119—6. Ready writing¹ makes not good writing,² but good writing³ brings on ready writing⁴.

Not modifies *makes*. *Writing*³ is the object complement in the first member. *On* is an adverb, modifying *brings*.

119—7. Be temperate in youth, or you will have to be abstinent in old age.

Will have to be abstinent is the predicate of the second member. *To be abstinent* is the attribute complement.

119—8. Places near the sea are not extremely cold in winter, nor are they extremely warm in summer.

Near modifies *places*. (*To*) *sea* modifies *near*. *Nor* connects the two members.

119—9. Either Hamlet was mad, or he feigned madness admirably.

Either introduces, and *or* connects; they are correlatives.

119—10. People in the streets are carrying umbrellas, hence it must be raining.

Hence connects the two members.

119—11. The man takes exercise, therefore he is well.

Therefore connects the members.

119—12. The camel is the ship of the ocean of sand, the reindeer is the camel of the desert of snow.

The comma takes the place of a conjunction omitted.

119—13. Of thy unspoken word thou art master, thy spoken word is master of thee.

Here also the comma takes the place of the conjunction.

119—14. The ship leaps, as it were, from billow to billow.

As introduces the clause, *it were*. *As it were* is independent in construction, being parenthetical.

119—15. Religion—who can doubt it?—is the noblest of themes for the exercise of intellect.

Who can doubt it is an independent clause, being parenthetical. *Noblest* modifies *theme* understood.

119—16. What grave (these are the words of Wellesley, speaking of the two Pitts) contains such a father and such a son!

What modifies *grave*. *Such* and *a* modify *father*, also

son. All within the marks of parenthesis is independent. *Speaking* is in the objective after *in* understood.

Lesson 78.

123—1. Sin has a great many tools, but a lie is a handle which fits them all.

A great is an adverb, modifying *many*. *Which fits them all* modifies *handle*. *All* may be taken as the object of *fits*, and *them* as the object of a preposition; thus, *fits all (of) them*.

123—2. Some one has said that the milkman's favorite song should be, "Shall we gather at the river?"

The object complement of *said* is all that follows that word. The attribute complement of *should be* is all that follows *be*.

123—3. Some of the insects which are most admired, which are decorated with the most brilliant colors, and which soar on the most ethereal wings, have passed the greater portion of their lives in the bowels of the earth.

The three relative clauses, each introduced by *which*, modify *insects*.

123—4. Still the wonder grew, that one small head could carry all he knew.

Still modifies *grew*. All that follows *grew* modifies *wonder*, as an explanatory clause. *That* is understood after *all*.

123—5. When a man becomes overheated by working, running, rowing, or making furious speeches, the six or seven millions of perspiration-tubes pour out their fluid, and the whole body is bathed and cooled.

Millions is the subject. *Pour* is the predicate; it is modified by the introductory subordinate clause, *When a man becomes*, etc. *Overheated* is modified by the compound phrase following, *by working, running, rowing, or making*. *Overheated* is an attribute after *becomes*.

123—6. Milton said that he did not educate his daughters in the languages, because one tongue was enough for a woman.

All that follows *said* is the object complement. The clause, *because one tongue, etc.*, modifies *did educate*. *Enough* is an attribute.

123—7. Glaciers, flowing down mountain-gorges, obey the law of rivers; the upper surface flows faster than the lower, and the centre faster than the adjacent sides.

All that follows the semicolon modifies *law*, the object complement of *obey*, being explanatory of that word. The explanatory portion is compound, and is equivalent to *The upper surface flows faster than the lower* (flows), and *the centre* (flows) *faster than the adjacent sides* (flow). The clauses introduced by *than* each modify the word *faster* preceding.

123—8. Not to wear one's best things every day is a maxim of New England thrift which is as¹ little disputed as² any verse in the catechism.

To wear is the subject of the principal clause. *Day* is in the objective after a preposition understood. *Maxim* is the attribute complement of *is*. The clause introduced by *which* modifies *maxim*. *Little* modifies *disputed*. *As* and *as* are correlatives, the first *as* modifying *little*, and the second connecting the clause, *as any verse in the catechism* (is disputed), which modifies *as*¹.

123—9. In Holland the stork is protected by law, because it eats the frogs and worms that would injure the dykes.

The clause introduced by *because* modifies *is protected*; the clause introduced by *that would injure, etc.* modifies *frogs and worms*.

123—10. It is one of the most marvellous facts in the natural world that, though hydrogen is highly inflammable, and oxygen

is a supporter of combustion, both, combined, form an element, water, which is destructive to fire.

It is the subject. All that follows *world* modifies the subject *it*, as an explanatory clause. *Is one* is the predicate of the principal clause. *That* is an introductory conjunction. Of the clause, *that both, combined, form, etc.*, *both* is the subject. *Combined* modifies *both*. *Water* is in apposition with *element*, the object complement of *form*. The closing clause modifies *element*. The two clauses introduced by *though* modify *form*.

123—11. In your war of 1812, when your arms on shore were covered by disaster, when Winchester had been defeated, when the Army of the North-west had surrendered, and when the gloom of despondency hung, like a cloud over the land, who first relit the fires of national glory and made the welkin ring with the shouts of victory?

The main clause is, *Who first relit, etc.* The compound predicate is *relit* and *made (to) ring*. *With shouts* modifies *ring*. These verbs are modified by the phrase, *in your war of 1812*, and by the four clauses each introduced by *when*. *Like* is a conjunctive adverb, joining to *hung* the clause, *like a cloud (hangs)*.

Lesson 80.

125—1. Whenever the wandering demon of Drunkenness finds a ship adrift, he steps on board, takes the helm, and steers straight for the Maelstrom.

The predicate is compound, consisting of *steps, takes, and steers*. *Straight*, an adverb, modifies *steers*. The clause introduced by *whenever* modifies the compound predicate. The predicate of this clause is *finds adrift, adrift* being the objective complement.

125—2. The energy which drives our locomotives and forces our steamships through the waves comes from the sun.

The predicate of the subordinate clause, *drives and forces*, is compound.

125—3. No scene is continually loved but one rich by joyful human labor; smooth in field, fair in garden, full in orchard.

But one = *except one*, modifies *scene*. *One* is modified by *rich*, *smooth*, *fair*, and *full*.

125—4. What is bolder than a miller's neck-cloth, which takes a thief by the throat every morning?

The clause, *than a miller's neck-cloth* (is bold) modifies *bolder*. The clause introduced by *which* modifies *neck-cloth*. *Morning* is the object of a preposition understood.

125—5. The setting sun stretched his celestial rods of light across the level landscape, and smote the rivers and the brooks and the ponds, and they became as blood.

Stretched and *smote* form the compound predicate. The object complement of *smote* is compound, consisting of *rivers*, *brooks*, and *ponds*. Of the second member *became as blood* is the predicate, *as* being an introductory conjunction, and *blood* an attribute.

125—6. Were the happiness of the next world as¹ closely apprehended as² the felicities of this, it were martyrdom to live.

It is the subject of the principal clause. *To live* modifies *it*, the subject, being explanatory. *Were martyrdom* is the predicate. The subordinate clause, consisting of all that precedes *it*, modifies *were* in the main clause. The connective is *if* understood. *Apprehended* is modified by *closely*, and *closely* by *as*¹. *As*¹ is modified by the clause, *as the felicities of this* (are apprehended).

126—7. There is a good deal of oratory in me, but I do'n't do² as well as I can in any one place, out of respect to the memory of Patrick Henry.

There is an independent adverb. *In me* modifies *is*. In the second member *do do* is the predicate. *N't* = *not*, modifies *do*¹. *As well as I can* (do) modifies *do*². The

first *as* modifies *well*; the second introduces the clause, *as I can*. The phrases, *in place* and *out of respect*, modify *do*. www.libtool.com.cn

126—8. Van Twiller's full-fed cheeks, which seemed to have taken toll of everything that went into his mouth, were curiously mottled and streaked with dusky red, like a Spitzenberg apple.

Cheeks is the subject, and *were mottled and streaked*, the predicate of the principal clause. *Which seemed*, etc. modifies *cheeks*. *To have taken* modifies *seemed*. *That went*, etc. modifies *everything*. The phrase, *with dusky red*, and the clause, *like a Spitzenberg apple* (is mottled and streaked), modify both verbs in the main clause. *Like* is a conjunctive adverb.

126—9. The evil of silencing the expression of opinion is,¹ that it is² robbing the human race.

All that follows *is*¹ is the attribute of the chief predicate. *That* is a connecting conjunction. Of the attribute, which is a subordinate clause, *is robbing* is the predicate.

126—10. There is no getting along with Johnson; if his pistol misses fire, he knocks you down with the butt of it.

There is an independent adverb. *Getting* is the subject of the first member; it is modified by the adverb *along*. In the second member *knocks* is the predicate. *Down*, an adverb, modifies *knocks*. The clause introduced by *if* also modifies *knocks*.

126—11. We think in words; and when we lack¹ fit words, we lack² fit thoughts.

The clause introduced by *when* modifies *lack*².

126—12. To speak perfectly well one must feel that he has got to the bottom of his subject.

To speak, etc. modifies the predicate *must feel*. The object complement of *must feel* is the clause introduced by *that*.

126—13. Office confers no honor upon a man¹ who is worthy of it, and it will disgrace every man² who is not.

The clause, *who is worthy* modifies *man*¹. *Who is not (worthy)* modifies *man*².

126—14. The men¹ whom men² respect, the women¹ whom women² approve, are the men² and women² who bless their species.

The clause, *whom men respect*, modifies *men*¹. The clause, *whom women approve*, modifies *women*¹. *Men*¹ and *women*¹ form the compound subject. *Are men*² and *women*² is the predicate. Both nouns in the predicate are modified by the clause, *who bless*, etc.

Lesson 81.

126—1. A ruler who appoints any man to an office, when there is in his dominions another man better qualified for it, sins against God and against the state.

The clause, *who appoints*, etc., modifies the subject *ruler*. *When there is*, etc. modifies *appoints*. *There is* an independent adverb. *Qualified* modifies *man*. *Better* modifies *qualified*.

126—2. We wondered whether the saltness of the Dead Sea was not Lot's wife in solution.

The object complement of *wondered* is the clause introduced by *whether*. *Dead Sea* is a complex noun. *Was wife* is the predicate of the subordinate clause. *Not* modifies *was*.

126—3. There is a class among us so conservative that they are afraid the roof will come down if you sweep off the cobwebs.

There is an independent adverb. *Among us* modifies *is*. *Conservative* modifies *class*, the subject. *So* modifies *conservative*. The clause introduced by *that* modifies the adverb *so*. The clause, *if you sweep*, etc., modifies *will come*. *Off* modifies *sweep*.

126—4. Kind hearts are more than coronets, and simple faith than Norman blood.

Than coronets (are) modifies *more*. *Is more* is understood after *faith*. *Than Norman blood* (is) modifies *more* understood.

126—5. All those things for which men plough, build, or sail, obey virtue.

Things is the subject and *obey*, the predicate, of the principal clause. The subordinate clause, *for which men, etc.*, modifies *things*.

126—6. The sea licks your feet, its huge flanks purr very pleasantly for you: but it will crack your bones and eat you, for all that.

In the third member the predicate is compound, consisting of *will crack* and (will) *eat*. The phrase, *for all that*, modifies both *will crack* and (will) *eat*.

127—7. Of all sad words of tongue or pen, the saddest are these: "It might have been."

Words, understood after *saddest*, is the subject. *Of tongue or pen* modifies *words*. *Of all sad words* modifies the subject understood. *Are these* is the predicate. *It might have been* is in apposition with *these*.

127—8. I fear three newspapers more than a hundred thousand bayonets.

More modifies the predicate *fear*. The subordinate clause, *than* (I fear) *a hundred thousand bayonets*, modifies *more*. *A hundred thousand* is a complex adjective, modifying *bayonets*.

127—9. He that allows himself to be a worm must not complain if he is trodden on.

The clause, *that allows, etc.*, modifies *he*. *To be worm* is an objective complement. The clause, *if he is trodden on*, modifies *must complain*.

127—10. It is better to write one word upon the rock than a thousand on the water or the sand.

It is the subject. *To write one word upon the rock* modifies *it*, being explanatory of the subject. The clause introduced by *than* (it is good to write) *a thousand*, etc. modifies *better*. *A thousand* is a complex adjective, modifying *words* understood.

127—11. A breath of New England's air is better than a sup of Old England's ale.

Is better is the predicate of the main clause. *Better* is modified by the subordinate clause, *than a sup*, etc. *Is good* is understood after *ale*, *sup* being the subject and *is good*, the predicate of the subordinate clause.

127—12. We are as¹ near to heaven by sea as² by land.

Are near is the predicate of the principal clause. *As*¹ modifies *near*. *As*² introduces the subordinate clause, *as* (we are near) *by land*, which modifies *as*¹.

127—13. No language that cannot suck up the feeding juices secreted for it in the rich mother-earth of common folk can bring forth a sound, lusty book.

Language is the subject, and *can bring forth* is the predicate, of the main clause. The clause, *that cannot suck up*, etc., modifies *language*. *Cannot suck up* is the predicate of the subordinate clause. *Secreted* modifies *juices*. *Sound* and *lusty* modify *book*.

127—14. Commend me to the preacher who has learned by experience what are human ills and what is human wrong.

The subject of the main clause is understood. *Commend* is the predicate. The clause, *who has learned*, etc., modifies *preacher*. The object complement of *has learned* are *human ills are what* and *human wrong is what*, in each of which *what* is the attribute,

127—15. He prayeth best¹ who loveth best² all things, both great and small; for the dear God who loveth us, he made and loveth all.

The clause, *who loveth best*, modifies *he*. *Best*¹ modifies *prayeth*. *Both* and *and* are correlatives. *Great* and *small* modify *things*. *The dear God who loveth us* is independent by pleonasm. The clause, *for he made*, modifies *prayeth*.

Lesson 104.

155—1. Mount Marcy is not so high as Mount Washington. *So* modifies *high*; *as* introduces the clause, *Mount Washington* (is high), modifying *so*.

155—2. As I passed by, I found an altar with this inscription. *As I passed by* modifies *found* in the main clause. *By* modifies *passed*.

155—3. It must be raining, as men are carrying umbrellas. *As men are carrying umbrellas* modifies *must be raining*, *as* being the connective.

155—5. Half-learned lessons slip from the memory as an icicle from the hand.

The subordinate clause, *as an icicle* (slips) etc., modifies *slip*.

155—6. If a slave's lungs breathe our air, that moment he is free.

Is free is the predicate of the principal clause. (*At*) *moment* modifies *is*. The clause introduced by *if* also modifies *is*.

155—7. If wishes were horses, all beggars might ride.

The first clause modifies *might ride*.

155—8. Who knows if one of the Pleiads is really missing?

The object complement of *knows* is the clause introduced by *if*

155—9. If the flights of Dryden are higher, Pope continues longer on the wing.

Longer modifies *continues*, the chief predicate. The clause introduced by *if* modifies *continues*.

156—10. England fears lest Russia may endanger British rule in India.

The subordinate clause, *lest Russia, etc.*, is the object complement after *fears*.

156—11. Watch and pray, lest ye enter into temptation.

The clause introduced by *lest* modifies *watch* and *pray* as an adverbial element.

156—13. Many thousand years have gone by since the Pyramids were built.

Many modifies *thousand*. *By* modifies *gone*. The clause introduced by *since* modifies the predicate *have gone*. *Years* is here in the objective after *of* understood.

156—14. Since the Puritans could not be convinced, they were persecuted.

The subordinate clause introduced by *since* modifies *were persecuted*.

Lesson 105.

156—1. The Pharisee thanked God that he was not like other men.

The clause introduced by *that* modifies *thanked*. *Was like* is the predicate of the subordinate clause. *Like* is an adjective. A preposition is understood before *men*.

156—2. Vesuvius threw its lava so far that Herculaneum and Pompeii were buried.

Far, an adverb, modifies *threw*. *So* modifies *far*, and *that*, its correlative, introduces the subordinate clause, which modifies *so*.

156—3. The smith plunges his red-hot iron into water, that he may harden it.

That he may harden it modifies *plunges*, the predicate of the main clause.

156—4. Socrates said that he who might be better employed was idle.

All that follows *said* is the object complement of that verb. *That* is a conjunction, introducing the clause, *he was idle*. The clause, *who might be better employed*, modifies *he*.

156—5. We never tell our secrets to people that pump for them.

That pump for them modifies *people*, *that* being the subject of the clause.

156—6. The Aztecs were astonished when they saw the Spanish horses.

The clause beginning *when they saw*, etc. modifies *were astonished*.

156—7. November is the month when the deer sheds its horns.

The clause, *when the deer sheds its horns*, modifies *month*, *when* being a relative adverb = *in which*.

156—8. When the future is uncertain, make the most of the present.

Most is the object complement of *make*. The clause, *When the future*, etc., modifies *make* adverbially.

156—9. When the five great European races left Asia is a question.

The subject consists of the subordinate clause preceding *is*. *When* modifies *left*. *Is question* is the predicate of the sentence.

157—10. When judges accept bribes, what may we expect from common people?

What is the object complement of *may expect*. The clause, *When judges accept bribes*, modifies *expect*.

157—11. The dial instituted a formal inquiry, when hands, wheels, and weights protested their innocence.

The clause, *when hands, wheels, etc.*, modifies *instituted*, the predicate of the main clause.

157—12. No one knows the place where Moses was buried.

The clause, *Moses was buried where*, modifies *place*. *Where*, a relative adverb, = *in which*.

157—13. Where Moses was buried is still a question.

Where Moses was buried is the subject of the main clause. *Is question* is the predicate. *Still* modifies *is*.

157—14. No one has been where Moses was buried.

Where Moses was buried, in this sentence, modifies *has been*.

157—15. Napoleon was a genius, while Wellington was a man of talents.

While, in this sentence, is equivalent to *and* or *but*, making the sentence compound.

157—16. While we sleep the body is rebuilt.

While we sleep modifies *is rebuilt*, the predicate of the main clause.

157—17. While Charles I. had many excellent traits, he was a bad king.

While Charles I. had many excellent traits modifies *was*, the predicate verb of the main clause.

Lesson 106.

157—1. Cæsar put the proffered crown aside, but he would fain have had it.

Aside modifies *put*; *fain* modifies *would have had*.

157—2. Take away honor and imagination and poetry from war, and it becomes carnage.

The object complement after *take* is compound, consisting of *honor*, *imagination*, and *poetry*.

157—6. Let but the commons hear this testament, and they would go and kiss dead Cæsar's wounds.

Commons (to) *hear* is the object complement of *let*, *commons* being the assumed subject of *hear*.

157—7. Men are carrying umbrellas; it is raining.

The semicolon takes the place of the conjunction in connecting the members of the sentence.

157—8. Have ye brave sons? look in the next fierce brawl to see them die.

The subject of the main clause is understood. *Look* is the predicate. *To see* modifies *look*. (To) *die* modifies *them*. The subordinate clause, *Have ye brave sons?* modifies *look*, *if* being understood.

158—9. The senate knows this, the consul sees it, and yet the traitor lives.

And yet is a complex conjunction.

158—10. Take away the grandeur of his cause, and Washington is a rebel instead of the purest of patriots.

Away modifies *take*. *Instead of* (patriot) modifies *is*. *The purest* and *of patriots* modify *patriot* understood.

158—12. Should we fail, it can be no worse for us.

(If) *we should fail* modifies *worse*.

158—13. Had the Plantagenets succeeded in France, there would never have been an England.

There is an independent adverb. *England* is the subject of the main clause. The clause, (if) *the Plantagenets had succeeded*, modifies *would have been*.

158—14. Were he my brother, I could do no more for him.

(If) *he were my brother* modifies *could do*. *More* is the object complement of *could do*.

158—15. Were I so disposed, I could not gratify the reader.

(If) *I were so disposed* modifies *could gratify*.

158—16. "Were I [Admiral Nelson] to die this moment, *more frigates* would be found written on my heart."

More frigates is the subject of the main clause. *If I were to die this moment* modifies the verb *would be found*. *Admiral Nelson* is in apposition with *I*, or it may be considered independent by pleonasm.

Lesson 109.

162—1. I did nothing but laugh.

But (to) laugh modifies *nothing*. *But* is a preposition.

162—2. It was once supposed that crystal is ice frozen so hard that it cannot be thawed.

The clause, *that crystal is ice*, etc., is explanatory of the subject, and modifies *it*. *Frozen* modifies *ice*. *Hard* modifies *frozen*. The clause, *that it cannot*, etc., modifies *so*.

162—3. What love equals a mother's?

What is an adjective, modifying *love*. *Mother's* modifies *love* understood.

162—4. There is nobody here but I.

Me should follow *but* used as a preposition. *But me* modifies *nobody*.

162—5. The fine arts were all but proscribed.

All but = *nearly* or *almost* is a complex adverb, modifying *proscribed*.

162—6. There's not a breeze but whispers of thy name.

But = *that not*, is a negative relative. *But whispers* = *that whispers not*, and modifies *breeze*.

162—7. The longest life is but a day.

But, an adverb, modifies *is*. *Is day* is the predicate.

162—8. What if the bee love not these barren boughs?

(*It matters*) is probably understood before *what*. The subordinate clause modifies the predicate verb understood.

162—9. That life is long which answer's life's great end.

That is an adjective, modifying *life*. *Which answers*, etc. modifies *life*, the subject.

162—10. What! I the weaker vessel?

What is an interjection. The copula *am* is understood after *I*.

162—11. Whom should I obey but thee?

The phrase, *but thee*, modifies *whom*.

162—12. What by industry and what by economy, he had amassed a fortune.

What and *what*, meaning partly, are adverbs, modifying the phrases, *by industry* and *by economy*.

162—13. I long ago found that out.

Found out, a complex verb, is the predicate. *That* is the object complement. *Ago* is an adverb, modifying *found out*. *Long* modifies *ago*.

162—14. One should not always eat what he likes.

What is in the objective after *eats*; also after *likes*.

162—15. There's not a white hair on your face but should have its effect of gravity.

There is an independent adverb. *But* is a negative relative, equivalent to *that not*. *But should have* = *that should not have*, and modifies the noun *hair*.

162—16. It was a look that, but for its quiet, would have seemed disdain.

The clause, *that would have, etc.*, modifies *look*. The phrase, *but for its quiet = except for its quiet*, modifies *would have seemed*.

162—17. He came but to return.

But is an adverb, modifying *to return*.

Lesson 120.

182—1. Not to know what happened before we were born is to be always a child.

To know is the subject. *What happened, etc.* is the object complement of *know*. *Before we were born* modifies *happened*. *To be child* is the attribute of *is* in the main clause, *child* being in the nominative after *to be*.

182—2. His being a Roman saved him from being made a prisoner.

Being is the subject. *Roman* is in the nominative after *being*. *From being made prisoner* modifies *saved*. *Being made* is in the objective after *from*, and *prisoner* in the nominative after *being made*.

182—3. I am this day weak, though anointed king.

Day is in the objective after a preposition understood. The clause, *though (I am) anointed king*, modifies *am*. *King* is in the nominative after *am anointed*.

182—4. What made Cromwell a great man was his unshaken reliance on God.

What is in the nominative to *made* and in the nominative to *was*. *Man* is a factitive or objective complement, after *made*.

182—5. Amos, the herdsman of Tekoa, was not a prophet's son.

Herdsman is in apposition with *Amos*, the subject. *A* modifies *prophet's*.

182—6. Arnold's success as teacher was remarkable.

Arnold's modifies *success*. *Teacher* is in apposition with *Arnold's*. *As* is an introductory conjunction.

183—7. Worship thy Creator, God; and obey his Son, the Master, King, and Saviour of men.

God is in apposition with *Creator*. *Master, King, and Saviour* are in apposition with *Son*.

183—8. Bear ye one another's burdens.

Ye is the subject. *One* is in apposition with *ye*.

183—9. What art thou, execrable shape, that darest advance?

Shape is in the nominative independent by address. *That darest advance* modifies the subject *thou*. (To) *advance* modifies *darest*.

183—10. O you hard hearts! you cruel men of Rome!

You is in the nominative independent by exclamation. *Hearts* is in apposition with *you*. *You* in the second expression is also in the nominative independent by exclamation. *Men* is in apposition with *you*.

183—11. Everybody acknowledges Shakespeare to be the greatest of dramatists.

To be (dramatist) is an objective complement after *acknowledges*. *Shakespeare* is the object complement. *Greatest* and *of dramatists* modify *dramatist* understood.

183—12. Think'st thou¹ this heart could feel a moment's joy, thou² being absent?

Thou being absent is independent in construction. *Thou¹* is the subject, and *think'st*, the predicate of the principal clause. The clause, *this heart could feel, etc.*, is the object complement of *think'st*.

183—18. Our great forefathers had left him naught to conquer but his country.

Him is in the objective after a preposition understood.

Naught is the object complement of *had left*. *To conquer* and the phrase, *but country*, modify *naught*.

183—14. I will attend to it myself.

Myself is in apposition with *I*.

183—15. This news of papa's puts me all in a flutter.

The phrase, *of papa's*, modifies *news*. *All* is an adverb, modifying the phrase, *in a flutter*. Some authorities would use *papa's* as a possessive, limiting an uncertain noun understood. It is really equivalent to both the possessive and the objective, but its use here puts it in the objective after the preposition.

183—16. What means that hand upon that breast of thine?

Hand is the subject. *Means what* is the predicate. *Upon that breast* modifies *hand*. *Of thine* modifies *breast*, *thine* being in the objective.

Lesson 129.

200—1. The lady is accomplished.

Accomplished is an attribute.

200—2. The task was not accomplished in a day.

Was accomplished is the predicate.

200—3. Are you prepared to recite?

Prepared is an attribute. *To recite* modifies *prepared*.

200—4. Dinner was soon prepared.

Was prepared is the predicate verb.

200—5. A shadow was mistaken for a foot-bridge.

200—6. You are mistaken.

In (5) *was mistaken* is the predicate verb; in (6) *mistaken* is the attribute after *are*.

200—7. The man was drunk¹ before the wine was drunk².

*Drunk*¹ is an attribute; *was drunk*² is the predicate verb.

200—8. The house is situated on the bank of the river.

Is situated is the predicate verb.

200—9. I am obliged to you.

Obliged is an attribute.

200—10. I am obliged to do this.

Am obliged is the predicate verb.

200—11. The horse is tired.

Tired is an attribute.

200—12. A fool and his money are soon parted.

Are parted is a predicate verb.

200—13. The tower is inclined.

Inclined is an attribute.

200—14. My body is inclined by years.

Is inclined is the predicate verb.

www.libtool.com.cn

SENTENCES

FROM

SWINTON'S ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

- 105—8. VANISHED is the ancient splendor, and before my dreamy eye
Wave these mingled shapes and figures, like a faded tapestry.

Splendor is in the nominative as subject ; *eye* is in the objective after *before*. *Shapes* and *figures* are used as subjects. *Tapestry* is in the nominative to a verb understood.

- 106—9. His spear, to equal which the tallest pine
Hewn on Norwegian hills to be the mast
Of some great ammiral were but a wand,
He walked with, to support uneasy steps
Over the burning marle.

Spear is object after *with* in the fourth line. *Pine* is the subject of *were* in line three. *Hills* is in the objective after *on*. *Ammiral* is in the objective after *of*. *Wand* is in the nominative after *were*. *Steps* is the direct object of *support*. *Marle* is in the objective after *over*.

- 106—10. The gushing flood the tartans dyed.

Flood is in the nominative to *dyed*. *Tartans* is in the objective after *dyed*.

- 106—11. Lives of great men all remind us
 We can make our lives sublime,
 And, departing, leave behind us
 Footprints on the sands of time.

Lives is in the nominative to *remind*. *Lives* in line two is the object of *make sublime*. *Departing* is a participle, modifying *we*. *Footprints* is the object of *leave*.

- 106—13. Leaves have their time to fall
 And flowers to wither at the North Wind's breath.

Flowers is in the nominative to *have* understood. *North Wind's* is a complex noun in the possessive, limiting *breath*.

- 106—15. The only, the perpetual dirge
 That's heard there is the sea-bird's cry,
 The mournful murmur of the surge,
 The cloud's deep voice, the wind's low sigh.

Dirge is the subject. *Cry*, *surge*, *voice*, and *sigh* are all in the nominative after *is*.

- 106—16. The patriarch made Joseph a coat of many colors.

Joseph is in the objective after *for* understood. *Coat* is the direct object of *made*.

- 106—17. Lend your neighbors a helping hand.

Neighbors is in the objective after *to* understood. *Hand* is the direct object of *lend*.

- 106—18. We forgive our friends their faults.

Friends is the direct object of *forgive*. *Faults* is in the objective after *for* understood.

- 106—19. Then give humility a coach-and-six,
 Justice a conqueror's sword, or truth a gown,
 Or public spirit its great cure, a crown.

Humility is in the objective after *to* understood. *Justice*, *truth*, and *spirit* are each in the objective after *to*

understood. *Coach-and-six, sword, gown, cure*, are all direct objects of *give*. *Crown* is in apposition with *cure*.

106—20. He chooses company, but not the squire's.

Squire's limits the noun *company* understood.

106—2. The emperor Kaoti, a soldier of fortune. marched against the Huns.

Soldier is in apposition with *Kaoti*.

107—3. 'Tis I, Hamlet the Dane.

Hamlet is in apposition with *I*, and *Dane* is in apposition with *Hamlet*.

107—5. There, swinging wide at her moorings, lay
The Somerset, British man-of-war—
A phantom ship.

Man-of-war and *ship* are in apposition with *Somerset*.

107—8. There were two fathers in this ghastly crew.

Fathers is the subject of *were*.

107—9. Brevity is the soul of wit.

Soul is in the nominative after *is*.

107—10. The proper study of mankind is man.

Man is in the nominative after *is*.

107—11. The principle which gave a peculiar coloring to Isabella's mind was piety.

Piety is in the nominative after *was*.

107—13. Others, their blue eyes with tears o'erflowing,
Stand, like Ruth, amid the golden corn.

Eyes is in the objective after *with* understood. *Ruth* is in the nominative to *stood* understood. *Overflowing* modifies *eyes*.

107—14. The hill-range stood
Transfigured in the silver flood
Its blown snows flashing cold and keen.

Snows is a noun in the objective after *with* understood.

107—15. Success being hopeless, preparations were made for a retreat.

Success is in the nominative absolute before *being*.

107—16. Uriel, no wonder if thy perfect sight,
Amid the sun's bright circlet where thou sitt'st,
See far and wide.

Uriel is in the nominative independent by address.
Wonder is in the nominative after *is* understood (It is no wonder). *Far* and *wide* are adverbs, modifying *see*.

107—17. Rise, crowned with light, imperial Salem, rise!
Salem is in the nominative independent by address.

107—18. With that she fell distract,
And, her attendants absent, swallowed fire.

Attendants is in the nominative absolute before *being* understood.

107—20. Listen, my children, and you shall hear
Of the midnight ride of Paul Revere.

Children is in the nominative independent by address.

107—21. O Caledonia! stern and wild,
Meet nurse for a poetic child,
Land of brown heath and shaggy wood,
Land of the mountain and the flood.

NOTE.—See page 84 for this sentence.

107—22. O lonely tomb in Moab's land,
O dark Bethpeor's hill,
Speak to these curious hearts of ours
And teach them to be still.

Tomb and *hill* are in the nominative independent by address.

107—23. The antechambers were crowded all night with lords and councillors.

Night is in the objective after a preposition understood.

107—24. Home they brought her warrior dead.

Home is an adverb. By some authorities it is given as a noun. www.libtool.com.cn

107—25. Patrick Henry was nearly six feet high.

Feet is in the objective after *by* understood. Swinton calls it an objective adverbial.

107—26. Not without deep solicitude I saw the angry clouds gathering in the horizon, north and south.

North and *south* are nouns in the objective after prepositions understood.

107—27. He that was dead came forth bound hand and foot.

Hand and *foot* is a complex adverb, modifying *bound*.

107—28. You came three times last week, but did you come the nearest way?

Times is in the objective after a preposition understood; or in the objective, according to some, without a governing word. *Week* and *way* are each in the objective after a preposition understood.

107—30. Milton, thou should'st be with us at this hour.

Milton is in the nominative independent by address.

112—1. We can show you where he lies.

You is in the objective after *to* understood.

112—6. Teach me thy statutes.

Me is in the objective after *teach*. *Statutes* is the direct object of *teach*.

112—8. Methought my request was heard, for it seemed to me as though the stains of manhood were passing from me, and I were relapsing into the purity and simplicity of childhood.

Methought is equivalent to *I thought*. *As though* is a complex conjunction.

118—9. I know not what course others may take; but as for me, give me liberty or give me death.

NOTE.—See page 75 for the discussion of this sentence.

www.libtool.com.cn

118—10. Who was the thane lives yet.

He is understood before *who*.

118—11.

What in me is dark,

illumine; what is low, raise and support.

NOTE.—See page 99 for the discussion of this sentence.

118—13. Ah! little they think who delight in the strains,
How the heart of the minstrel is breaking.

Who is in the nominative to *delight*. *How the heart,* etc. is the direct object of *think*.

118—14. Oh that those lips had language! Life has passed
With me but roughly since I heard thee last.
Those lips are thine—thy own sweet smile I see,
The same that oft in childhood solaced me.

I wish is understood after *oh*. *Thine* is in the nominative after *are*.

118—16. Roll on, thou deep and dark blue Ocean, roll!

Thou is independent by address. *Ocean* is in apposition with *thou*.

118—17. Those who came to laugh remained to pray.

Who is in the nominative to *came*.

118—18. We two set upon you four.

Two is used as a noun in apposition with *we*. *Four* is here a noun in apposition with *you*.

118—19. England herself will sooner treat for peace with us on a footing of independence.

Herself is in apposition with the noun *England*.

118—20. O ye Romans, you are poor slaves.

Ye is independent, and *Romans* is in apposition with *ye*.

113—21. What do you mean, you blockhead?

What is in the objective after *mean*. *You* is in the nominative independent, and *blockhead* is in apposition with *you*.

113—22. On these and kindred thoughts intent I lay
In silence, musing by my comrade's side,
He [being] also silent.

He is in the nominative absolute before *being*.

113—23. Thou away, the very birds are mute.

Thou is in the nominative absolute before *being* understood.

113—24. God from the mount of Sinai, whose gray top
Shall tremble, he descending, will himself
Ordain them laws.

Whose is in the possessive, limiting *top*. *He* is in the nominative absolute before *descending*. *Himself* is in apposition with *God*. *Them* is in the objective after *for* understood.

115—3. Three fishers went sailing away to the west.

West is here used as a noun.

115—4. Roll on, thou deep and dark blue Ocean, roll!

Dark blue is a complex adjective, modifying *ocean*.

115—5. For of all sad words of tongue or pen,

The saddest are these—"It might have been."

Saddest is an adjective, modifying *words* understood.

115—7. Like other dull men, the king was all his life suspicious of superior people.

All, an adjective, modifies *life*.

116—9. Each ivied arch and pillar lone

Pleas haughtily for glories gone.

Lone, an adjective, modifies *pillar*; *gone* modifies *glories*.

- 117—1. The rainbow comes and goes,
 And lovely is the rose ;
 The moon doth with delight
 Look round her when the heavens are bare ;
 Waters on a starry night
 Are beautiful and fair.

Lovely is a predicate adjective, modifying *rose*. *Bare* is a predicate adjective, modifying *heavens*. *Beautiful* and *fair* are predicate adjectives referring to *waters*.

- 118—2. "Oh, sir," said the good woman, "he was such a likely lad—so sweet-tempered, so kind to every one around him, so dutiful to his parents."

Likely modifies *lad*. *Sweet-tempered*, *kind*, and *dutiful* refer to *he*.

- 118—3. The stately homes of England,
 How beautiful they stand !

Beautiful is a predicate adjective. The clause is equivalent to *How beautiful they are !*

- 118—4. Why call ye me good ?

Good is a factitive adjective, referring to *me*.

- 118—5. Or, if a path be dangerous known,
 The danger's self is law alone.

Dangerous is an abstract adjective after *to be* understood.

- 118—6. Come when the heart beats high and warm.

High and *warm* are adjectives after *beats*, which is equivalent to *is*.

- 118—7. Thus, from afar, each dim-discovered scene
 More pleasing seems than all the past have been.

More pleasing is a predicate adjective. The expression *seems more pleasing* = *is more pleasing*.

118—8. By heaven, I change
My thought, and hold thy valor light
As that of some vain carpet-knight.

Light is a factitive adjective, referring to *valor*, *hold light* being the predicate.

120—2. Then shrieked the timid.

Shrieked, a verb, agrees with *timid*, the subject.

120—9. Then rose from sea to sky the wild farewell.

Rose is a verb, agreeing with *farewell*, the subject.

120—18. In words, as fashions, the same rule will hold,
Alike fantastic if too new or old ;
Be not the first by whom the new is tried,
Nor yet the last to lay the old aside.

Will hold is a verb, agreeing with *rule*. *Be* agrees with *thou* or *you* understood.

123—1. To be virtuous is to be happy.

To be virtuous is used here as the subject, and *to be happy* as the attribute of the sentence ; the infinitive in each is in the nominative case.

123—2. Seeing is believing.

Seeing, a participle used as a noun, is the subject, and *believing* is the predicate nominative of the sentence.

123—8. I remember to have seen William at the rink.

To have seen is the direct object of *remember*.

123—4. Philosophy teaches us to endure afflictions.

To endure is used as the direct object of *teaches*

123—6. It is painful to see an animal suffering.

To see, etc. modifies *it*, being explanatory.

123—7. His having failed is not surprising.

Having failed is used as the subject.

123—8. I recommended turning a new leaf.

Turning, a participial noun, is the direct object of *recommended*.
www.libtool.com.cn

123—9. Throwing their muskets aside, the soldiers rushed on the foe.

Throwing is a participle, relating to *soldiers*.

123—10. Born to a crown, Louis XVI. died on the scaffold.

Born is a participle, relating to *Louis XVI.*

123—11. They wish to turn him from keeping bad company.

To turn is the direct object of *wish*. *Keeping* is in the objective after *from*.

123—12. What we always put off doing,
 Clearly we shall never do.

Doing is a participial noun in the objective after *put off*, a complex verb.

124—2. Ill-fared it then with Roderick Dhu.

Ill is an adverb, modifying *fared*.

124—4. The world was all before them where to choose
 Their place of rest, and Providence their guide.

Where is a relative adverb, modifying *to choose*. *All* is an adverb, modifying *before them*.

124—6. And when above the surges
 They saw his crest appear,
 All Rome sent forth a rapturous cry,
 And even the ranks of Tuscany
 Could scarce forbear to cheer.

When is a conjunctive adverb. *Scarce* = *scarcely*, modifies *could forbear*.

124—7. Why should we shrink from what we cannot shun?

Why is an adverb, modifying *should shrink*.

125—2. A murmuring whisper through the nunnery ran.

Through, a preposition, shows the relation between *nunnery* and *ran*.

125—6. Through all the wild October days the clash and din resounded in the air.

Through is a preposition, showing the relation between *days* and *resounded*.

125—7. But on the hill the golden-rod, and the aster in the wood,

And the yellow sunflower by the brook, in autumn beauty stood.

On is a preposition, showing the relation between *hill* and *golden-rod*. *In* shows the relation between *beauty* and *stood*.

125—8. There is a special providence in the fall of a sparrow.

In, a preposition, shows the relation between *fall* and *is*.

125—10. In the spring of 1493, while the court was still at Barcelona, letters were received from Christopher Columbus, announcing his return to Spain, and the successful achievement of his great enterprise by the discovery of land beyond the western ocean.

In, a preposition, shows the relation between *spring* and *were received*. *By*, a preposition, shows the relation between *discovery* and *achievement*. *Beyond*, a preposition, shows the relation between *ocean* and *lying* understood.

126—2. Some murmur when their sky is clear

And wholly bright to view,

If one small speck of dark appear

In their great heaven of blue.

And, a conjunction, connects *clear* and *bright*. *If* is a subordinate conjunction, connecting the last two lines with the preceding two.

126—3. 'Twas noon,
And Helon knelt beside a stagnant pool
In the lone wilderness.

And connects the two main clauses between which it stands.

126—4. Millions of spiritual creatures walk the earth unseen,
Both when we wake and when we sleep.

Both—and are correlative conjunctions, *both* being introductory and *and*, the connective.

142—1. Flashed all their sabres bare.

Sabres is the subject. *Bare* is a predicate adjective.

142—2. When that the poor have cried, Cæsar hath wept.

In the subordinate clause, *poor*, used as a noun, is the subject. *That* is superfluous, but *when that* may be considered a conjunctive adverb.

142—3. Beyond that I seek not to penetrate the veil.

Beyond is a preposition, showing the relation between *that* and *penetrate*.

142—5. To do aught good never will be our task.

To do is the subject. *Aught* is the direct object. *Task* is in the nominative after *will be*.

142—6. Jerusalem has derived some reputation from the number and importance of her memorable sieges.

Importance is in the objective after a preposition understood.

142—7. The service past, around the pious man,
With ready zeal, each honest rustic ran.

Service is in the nominative absolute before *being* understood. *Around* shows the relation between *man* and *ran*.

142—8. Seasons return, but not to me returns

Day, or the sweet approach of even or morn.

Day is the subject of *returns*. *Approach* also is in the nominative to *returns*.

142—9. Whatever is, is right.

NOTE.—See page 21 for this sentence.

142—10. Dust thou art, to dust returnest,

Was not spoken of the soul.

NOTE.—See page 70 for this sentence.

145—1.

Father, thy hand

Hath reared these venerable columns; thou

Didst weave this verdant roof.

Father is in the nominative independent by address.

145—2. You say you are a better soldier.

The direct object of *say* is all that follows that word.

145—4. Pleasantly rose next morning the sun on the village of Grand-Pré.

Sun is the subject of *rose*. *Morning* is in the objective after a preposition understood.

145—5. One morn a Peri at the gate of heaven stood disconsolate.

Morn is in the objective after a preposition understood. *Peri* is the subject of *stood*. *Disconsolate* is an adjective attribute. *Stood disconsolate* = *was disconsolate*.

145—6. Where De Soto was buried cannot be determined.

The subject of the main clause is *De Soto was buried where*.

145—7. A little learning is a dangerous thing;

Drink deep, or taste not the Pierian spring.

Learning is the subject, and *thing*, the attribute noun, of the first member. *Spring* is the direct object of *taste*.

- 145—8. He prayeth best who loveth best
 All things both great and small;
 For the dear God who loveth us,
 He made and loveth all.

NOTE.—See page 249.

146—9. The Accusing Spirit, which flew up to heaven's chancery with the oath, blushed as he gave it in; and the Recording Angel, as he wrote it down, dropped a tear upon the word, and blotted it out forever.

NOTE.—See page 72 for this sentence.

146—10. We know that if we could cause this structure to ascend, not only till it reached the skies, but till it pierced them, its broad surfaces could still contain but part of that which, in an age of knowledge, hath already been spread over the earth, and which history charges itself with making known to all future times.

Structure to ascend is the direct object of *cause*. *Not only* and *but* are correlatives. *Till it reached* and *till it pierced* modify *to ascend*. *But* is an adjective, modifying *part*. *Making known* is used as a participial noun, in the objective after *with*.

- 146—11. Then methought the air grew denser, perfumed
 from an unseen censer
 Swung by seraphim whose footfalls tinkled on the
 tufted floor.
 "Wretch," I cried, "thy God hath lent thee¹—by
 these angels he hath sent thee²
 Respite¹—respite² and nepenthe from thy memories
 of Lenore!
 Quaff, oh quaff this kind nepenthe and forget this
 lost Lenore!"
 Quoth the raven—*Nevermore!*"

Methought = *I thought*. *Perfumed*, a participle, modifies *air*. *Swung*, a participle, modifies *censer*. *Wretch* is independent, but the whole expression, "*Wretch, thy God,*" etc., is the direct object of *cried*. *Thee*¹ and *thee*² are each

in the objective after a preposition. *Respite*¹ is the direct object of *hath sent*. *Respite*² and *nepenthe* are in the objective after *hath sent* understood. *Nevermore* is a noun, the direct object of *quoth*. *Raven* is the subject of *quoth*.

153—1. Outflew

Millions of flaming swords, drawn from the thighs

Of mighty cherubim.

Millions is the subject and *outflew* the predicate. *Drawn*, a participle, modifies *swords*.

153—2. With a slow and noiseless footstep

Comes that messenger divine.

Messenger is the subject. *Divine*, an adjective, modifies *messenger*.

153—3. The hawthorn bush, with seats beneath the shade

For talking age and whispering lovers made.

Talking is an adjective, modifying *age*, and *whispering*, an adjective, modifying *lovers*. *Made* is a participle, modifying *seats*.

153—4. The younger guest purloined the glittering prize.

Glittering is an adjective, modifying *prize*.

153—5. The service past, around the pious man,

With steady zeal, each honest rustic ran.

Past is a participle, relating to *service*.

153—6. The wretch, concentrated all in self,

Living, shall forfeit fair renown,

And, doubly dying, shall go down

To the vile dust, from whence he sprung,

Unwept, unhonored, and unsung.

Concentrated is a participle, modifying *wretch*. *Living* and *dying*, participles, also modify *wretch*. *Down*, an adverb, modifies *shall go*. *Whence* is here used as a noun after *from*. *Unwept*, *unhonored*, and *unsung* are predicate adjectives, modifying *wretch*.

153—7. The patient face that once had lain upon the bed was glorified and radiant; but his heart found out his sister among all the host.

Glorified and *radiant* are predicate adjectives after *was*. *Found out* is a complex verb, agreeing with *heart*. *All* is an adjective, modifying *host*.

153—8. First in war, first in peace, first in the hearts of his countrymen, Washington was second to none in the humble and endearing scenes of private life.

First, *first*, and *first* are adjectives, referring to *Washington*. *Second* is a predicate adjective, referring to *Washington*. *None* is an adjective pronoun. *Humble* and *endearing* are adjectives, modifying *scenes*.

154—9. How dear to this heart are the scenes of my childhood,

When fond recollection presents them to view!

Dear is a predicate adjective after *are*.

154—10. This day I was gratified with what I had often desired to witness—the condition of a sea in a tempest. I had contemplated the ocean in all its other phases, and they are almost innumerable. At one time it is seen reposing in perfect stillness under the blue sky and bright sun. At another, slightly ruffled, and then its motion causes his rays to tremble and dance in broken fragments of silvery or golden light—and the sight is dazzled by following the track from whence his beams are reflected—while all besides seems to frown in the darkness of its ripple.

Gratified is a predicate adjective, referring to *I*. *What* has a double construction; it is in the objective after *with* and in the objective after *witness*. *Condition* is in apposition with *what* as the direct object of *witness*. *Innumerable* is a predicate adjective after *are*. *Reposing* is a participle, modifying *it*. *Another* is an adjective pronoun in the objective after *at*. *Ruffled* is a participle, modify-

ing *it* understood. *Following* is a participle, used as a noun in the objective after *by*. *Whence* is used as a noun in the objective after *from*. *Besides* is an adjective, relating to *all*.

160—1. Now Jove suspends his golden scales in air,
Weighs the men's wit against the lady's hair.

Men's is in the possessive and modifies *wit*; *lady's* is in the possessive and modifies *hair*.

160—2. Little-minded people's thoughts move in such small circles that five minutes' conversation gives you an arc long enough to determine their whole curve.

Little-minded, an adjective, modifies *people's*. *People's* is a noun in the possessive and modifies *thoughts*. *Five* is an adjective modifying *minutes*, and *minutes* is a noun in the possessive, modifying *conversation*.

161—4. Tell me what thy lordly name is on the Night's Plutonian shore.

Night's is a noun in the possessive, limiting *shore*. *Plutonian* is an adjective, modifying *shore*.

161—7. 'Twas made of the white snail's pearly shell.

White is an adjective, modifying *snail's*. *Snail's* is in the possessive, modifying *shell*.

161—8. Quench the timber's falling embers,
Quench the red leaves in December's
Hoary rime and chilly spray.

Timber's is in the possessive and modifies *embers*. *December's* is a noun in the possessive and modifies *rime* and *spray*.

161—9. Let all the ends thou aim'st at be thy country's [ends], thy God's and truth's.

Country's, *God's*, and *truth's* are in the possessive, modifying *ends* understood.

- 161—10. Oh, well for the fishermen's boy
That he shouts with his sister at play.

Well is a predicate adjective after *is* understood. *Fisherman's* is a noun in the possessive, modifying *boy*. *That he shouts*, etc., an explanatory clause, modifies *it* understood.

- 163—1. 'Tis I, Hamlet the Dane.

NOTE.—See same sentence, page 263.

- 163—2. At midnight, in the forest shades,
Bozzaris ranged his Suliote band,
True as the steel of their tried blades,
Heroes in heart and hand.

True, an adjective, modifies *band*. *Heroes* is in apposition with *band*, in the objective.

- 163—4. There, swinging wide at her moorings, lay
The Somerset, British man-of-war—
A phantom ship.

NOTE.—See same sentence, page 263.

- 163—5. So work the honey-bees,
Creatures that by a rule in nature teach
The art of order to a peopled kingdom.

Honey-bees is the subject. *Creatures* is in apposition with *honey-bees*.

- 163—6. That best portion of a good man's life—
His little, nameless, unremembered acts
Of kindness and of love.

Acts is in apposition with *portion*, which is in the objective. The preceding lines are

(With) Feelings, too,
Of unremembered pleasure; such perhaps,
As have no slight or trivial influence
On that best portion, etc.

- 163—7. It is seldom that the father and the son, he¹ who has borne the weight, and he² who has been brought up in the lustre

of the diadem, exhibit equal capacity for the administration of affairs.

*He*¹ is in apposition with *father*, and *he*² is in apposition with *son*, both being in the nominative to *exhibit*.

167—2. Not a soldier discharged his farewell shot.

Shot is the direct object of *discharged*.

167—4. Their furrow oft the stubborn glebe has broke.

Furrow is the subject, and *glebe* the object, of *has broke*.

167—5. Beaux banish beaux, and coaches¹ coaches² drive.

*Coaches*¹ is the subject, and *coaches*² the direct object of *drive*.

167—6. The gushing flood the tartans dyed.

NOTE. See page 261 for this sentence.

167—7. Me he restored, and him he hanged.

Me is the object of *restored*, and *him* is the object of *hanged*.

167—8. Knowledge in general expands the mind, exalts the faculties, refines the taste of pleasure, and opens innumerable sources of intellectual enjoyment.

Mind, *faculties*, *tastes*, and *sources* are all direct objects.

167—9. For my own part, I have ever believed, and do now know, that there are witches.

The clause, *that there are witches*, is the direct object of *believed* and *do know*.

167—11. They follow an adventurer whom¹ they fear, and obey a power which they hate; we serve a monarch whom² we love—a God whom³ we adore.

*Whom*¹ is the direct object of *fear*; *which* is the direct object of *hate*; *monarch* and *God* are the direct objects of *serve*; *whom*² is the direct object of *love*; and *whom*³ is the direct object of *adore*.

- 167—12. Let me live a life of faith,
Let me die thy people's death.

Life is the direct object of *live*, and *death* the direct object of *die*.

167—13. He gathered new and greater armies from his own and—from subjugated lands. He called forth the young and brave—one from every household—from the Pyrenees to the Zuyder Zee—from Jura to the ocean. He marshalled them into long and majestic columns, and went forth to seize that universal dominion which seemed almost within his grasp.

Armies is the direct object of *gathered*. *Young* and *brave* are here used as nouns, direct objects of *called forth*. *One* is in apposition with *young* and *brave*. *Them* is the direct object of *marshalled*. *Dominion* is the direct object of *to seize*. *Almost*, an adverb, modifies *within grasp*.

- 172—1. Tell me not in mournful numbers
Life is but an empty dream.

Me is in the objective after a preposition understood. *But* is an adverb, modifying *is*. *Dream* is a predicate nominative.

- 172—2. The grave is not its goal.
Goal is in the nominative after *is*.

- 172—3. It is I—be not afraid.
I is in the nominative after *is*.

- 172—4. Breathes there a man with soul so dead,
Who never to himself hath said,
This is my own, my native land?

The clause, *who never*, etc., modifies *man*. The last line is the direct object of *hath said*. *Land* is the predicate nominative after *is*.

172—5. The proper study of mankind is man.

Study is the subject, and *man* the attribute of the sentence. www.libtool.com.cn

178—8. The other shape¹—

If shape² it¹ might be called that shape³ had none
Distinguishable in member, joint, or limb;
Or substance might be called that shadow seem'd,
For each seem'd either: black it² stood as night.

*Shape*¹ is in the nominative independent by pleonasm. *Shape*² is the predicate nominative after *might be called*. *That shape had*, etc. modifies *it*¹. *That* is the subject of *had*. *Shape*³ is the direct object of *had*. *None* is an adjective, modifying *shape*³. *Distinguishable* is an adjective, modifying *shape*³. *If* is understood after *or* in the fourth line, and *it* is understood after *substance*. *Substance* is the predicate nominative after *might be called*. *That shadow seem'd* modifies *it* understood. *Shadow* is the predicate nominative after *seem'd*. In the last line *each* is the subject and *either* the predicate nominative. *Black* is an attributive adjective. *Black it stood* = *it was black*, is the main clause. *Night* is the subject of a verb understood.

175—1. The very fairest flowers usually wither the most quickly.

Very, an adverb, modifies *fairest*. *Usually* and *most quickly* modify *wither*. *The* is an adverb, modifying *most*.

175—2. Slowly and sadly we laid him down.

Slowly, *sadly*, and *down* are adverbs, modifying *laid*.

175—3. And now¹ a bubble bursts, and now² a world.

*Now*¹ is an adverb, modifying *bursts*; and *now*² modifies *bursts* understood.

175—4. For them no more the blazing hearth shall burn.

More, an adverb, modifies *shall burn*, and *no* modifies *more*.

www.libtool.com.cn

175—5. Ill blows the wind that profits nobody.

Ill is an adjective, referring to *wind*.

175—6. Freely¹ we serve because we freely² love.

*Freely*¹ is an adverb, modifying *serve*. *Freely*² is an adverb, modifying *love*. *Because* is a conjunctive adverb.

175—7. When here but three days since I came,

Bewildered in pursuit of game,
All seemed as¹ peaceful and as² still
As³ the mist slumbering on yon hill.

When is a conjunctive adverb, connecting the first two lines as a subordinate clause with the third line as the principal clause. *Here* is an adverb, modifying *came*. *But*, an adverb, modifies *three*. *Since* is an adverb, modifying *came*. *Bewildered* is a participle, modifying *I*. *As*¹ modifies *peaceful*; *as*² modifies *still*. *Peaceful* and *still* are predicate adjectives. *As*³ is a conjunctive adverb. *Mist* is in the nominative to a verb (*is*) understood. *Slumbering* is a participle, modifying *mist*.

179—1. Fools who came to scoff remained to pray.

Who refers to *fools* as its antecedent.

179—2. This petulance ruined Essex, who had to deal with a spirit naturally as proud as his own.

Who had to deal, etc. modifies *Essex*. *Own* is the subject of *was proud*, understood.

179—3. Shall he alone whom rational we call

Be pleased with nothing, if not blessed with all?

Shall be pleased agrees with *he*. *Whom* is in the objective after *call*. *Rational* is a factitive adjective.

179—4. A land of slaves shall ne'er be mine.

Mine is the subject of the sentence. It may also be construed as in the nominative after *shall be*.

179—5. Some natural tears they dropped, but wiped them soon.

Wiped agrees with *they* understood. *Tears* is the direct object of *dropped*.

179—6. They [the Indians] are shrinking before the mighty tide which¹ is pressing them away; they must soon hear the roar of the last wave which² will settle over them for ever.

*Which*¹ refers to *tide*. *Which*² refers to *wave*.

179—7. Cold is thy brow, my son! and I am chill,
As to my bosom I have tried to press thee.

Cold is a predicate adjective after *is*. *Chill* is also a predicate adjective after *am*. *As* is a conjunctive adverb. *To my bosom* modifies *press*.

180—8. Woodman, spare that tree;
 Touch not a single bough;
In youth it sheltered me,
 And I'll protect it now.
'Twas my forefather's hand
 That placed it near his cot;
Then, woodman, let it stand;
 Thy axe shall harm it not.

Woodman is in the nominative independent by address. *Not* is an adverb, modifying *touch*. In the fifth line *it* is the subject. *Hand* is a predicate nominative. The line, *That placed*, etc., modifies *it*, the subject. *Cot* is in the objective after a preposition understood. *Then* is an introductory adverb. (*To*) *stand* modifies *let*.

187—1. To him who in the love of Nature holds
 Communion with her visible forms, she speaks
 A various language.

To shows the relation between *him* and *speaks* (*speaks to him*).

187—2. The eulogium pronounced on the character of the State of South Carolina, by the honorable gentleman, for her Revolutionary and other merits, meets my hearty concurrence.

By shows the relation between *gentleman* and *pronounced*. *For* shows the relation between *merits* and *pronounced*.

187—3. Into¹ the jaws of death, into² the mouth of hell,
Rode the six hundred.

*Into*¹ shows the relation between *jaws* and *rode*. *Into*² shows the relation between *mouth* and *rode*.

187—4. At midnight, in¹ his guarded tent,
The Turk was dreaming of the hour
When Greece, her knee in² supplicance bent,
Should tremble at his power.

At shows the relation between *midnight* and *was dreaming*. *In*¹ shows the relation between *tent* and *was dreaming*. *In*² shows the relation between *supplicance* and *bent*.

187—5. But now no sound of laughter was heard amongst the
foes ;
A wild and wrathful clamor from all the vanguard
rose.

From shows the relation between *vanguard* and *rose*.

187—6. Run to your houses, fall upon your knees,
Pray to the gods to intermit the plague
That needs must light on this ingratitude.

Needs is an adverb, modifying *must light*. *To intermit* modifies *pray*. The clause, *That needs*, etc., modifies *plague*.

187—7. The trees are now in their fullest foliage and brightest verdure ; the woods are gay with the clustered flowers of the laurel ; the air is perfumed by the sweetbrier and the wild rose ; the meadows are enamelled with clover-blossoms ; while the young apple, the peach, and the plum begin to swell, and the cherry to glow among the green leaves.

In shows the relation between *foliage* and *verdure*, and

the verb *are*. *By* shows the relation between *sweetbrier* and *rose*, and the verb *is perfumed*. *Begins* is understood before *to glow*.

190—1. Lightly and brightly breaks away
The morning from her mantle gray.

And connects the adverbs *lightly* and *brightly*.

190—2. Right sharp and quick the bells all night
Rang out from Bristol town.

And connects the adverbs *sharp* and *quick*.

190—3. Men must work and ¹ women must weep,
Though storms be hidden and ² waters deep.

*And*¹ connects the two clauses, *men must work* and *women must weep*. *And*² connects *storms be hidden* and *waters (be) deep*. *Though* is a subordinate conjunction, connecting the clauses in the second line with those in the first.

190—4. A wise man will make haste to forgive, because he knows the true value of time, and will not suffer it to pass away in unnecessary pain.

Because is a subordinate conjunction, connecting *he knows*, etc. with the preceding clause. *And* connects the two parts of the subordinate clause. *Make haste* = *hasten*, agrees with *man*. *To pass* modifies *suffer*.

190—5. These wave their town-flag in the arched gateway, and stand, rolling their drum; but to no purpose.

And connects the first and the second member. *Rolling*, a participle, modifies *these*. *But* connects the second member with (They do it) *to no purpose*.

190—6. For none made sweeter melody
Than did the poor blind boy.

For is an introductory conjunction. *Than* is a subordinate conjunction, connecting the latter clause with the former.

190—7. Whether the thing was green or blue.

Whether is an introductory conjunction. *Or* is a conjunction, connecting *green* and *blue*. *Whether* and *or* are correlatives.

190—8. No leave ask'st thou of either wind or tide.

Either and *or* are correlatives; *or* connects *wind* and *tide*.

190—9. Whether he was combined
With those of Norway; or¹ did line the rebel
With hidden help and vantage; or² that with both
He labor'd in his country's wrack, I know not.

Whether connects *I know not* with *he was combined*, etc. *Or*¹ and *or*² connect the clauses between which they are placed.

190—10. This, I think, I may at least say, that we should have a great many fewer disputes in the world if words were taken for what they are, the signs of our ideas only, and not for things themselves.

This is an adjective pronoun, the object of *say*. *That* is a conjunction, connecting the clause following with the clause preceding. *A great many* may be taken as a complex adverb in the sense of *much*, and modifies *fewer*.

195—1. The President having given his assent the bill became a law.

President is in the nominative independent or absolute, before *having given*.

195—2. Those barbarous ages past, succeeded next the birthday of invention.

Ages is in the nominative independent or absolute, before (being) *past*. *Succeeded* is the predicate, and *birthday* the subject, of the sentence.

195—3. Then shall I be no more ;
 And Adam, wedded to another Eve,
 Shall live with her enjoying ; I [being] extinct.

I is in the nominative independent, or absolute, before (being) *extinct*. *Wedded* is a participle, modifying *Adam*.

195—4. Success being now hopeless, preparations were made for retreat.

Success is in the nominative independent, or absolute, before *being*.

195—5. Thou looking on,
 Shamed to be overcome or overreached,
 Would utmost vigor raise.

Thou is in the nominative to *would raise*. *Looking on* and *shamed* are participles, referring to *thou*. *Vigor* is in the objective after *would raise*.

195—1. Awake, my St. John, leave all meaner things.

St. John is independent by address.

195—2. Oh the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and knowledge of God !

Depth is independent by exclamation.

195—3. A horse ! a horse ! my kingdom for a horse !
Horse ! and *horse !* are independent by exclamation.

195—4. Plato, thou reasonest well.
Plato is independent by address.

195—5. O thou that with surpassing glory crowned,
 Look'st from thy sole dominion, like the god
 Of this new world,
 O sun ! to tell thee how I hate thy beams.

Thou is in the nominative independent by exclamation.
Like is an adjective, followed by the phrase, (unto) *God*.
To tell modifies a predicate understood.

195—6. The gallant king, he skirted still
 The margin of that mighty hill.
King is independent by pleonasm.

209—5. Nothing in his life became him like the leaving it.

Nothing is the simple subject. *Nothing in his life* is the logical subject. *Like* is a conjunctive adverb. *Leaving* is in the nominative to a verb understood.

209—6. All the land, in flowery squares, beneath a broad and equal-blowing wind, smelt of the coming summer.

Land is the simple subject. The logical subject is *All the land*, etc., including all preceding *smelt*.

209—7. The morn, in russet mantle clad,
Walks o'er the dew of yon high eastern hill.

Morn is the simple subject, and the whole of the first line the logical subject. *Clad* is a participle, modifying *morn*.

209—8. Short-lived likings may be bred
By a glance from fickle eyes.

Likings is the simple subject, and *short-lived likings*, the logical subject.

209—9. Under her torn hat glowed the wealth
Of simple beauty and rustic health.

Wealth is the simple subject. *The wealth of simple beauty and rustic health* is the logical subject.

209—10. Night, sable goddess, from her ebon throne,
In rayless majesty now stretches forth
Her leaden sceptre o'er a prostrate world.

Night is the simple subject. *Night, sable goddess*, is the logical subject.

221—1. In unploughed Maine he sought the lumberer's gang.
In unploughed Maine modifies *sought*. *Gang* is the direct object of *sought*.

221—2. Heaven from all creatures hides the book of fate.

Heaven is the subject. *Book* is the direct object of *hides*, the predicate. The phrase, *from all creatures*, modifies *hides*.

221—3. Stormed at with shot and shell,
Boldly they rode and well.

Stormed at, etc. modifies *they*. *At* is a complex participle, modifying *they*. *Boldly* and *well* are adverbs, modifying *rode*.

221—4. Shall we gather strength by irresolution and inaction?

By irresolution and inaction modifies *gather*.

221—5. The moon threw its silvery light upon the rippling waters of the lake.

Upon the rippling waters modifies *threw*.

221—6. Tell all the world thy joy.

(To) *all the world* modifies *tell*.

221—7. Clad in a robe of everlasting snow, Mount Everest towers above all other mountain-peaks of the globe.

Clad, etc. modifies the subject, *Mount Everest*. *All* and *other* modify *mountain-peaks*.

221—8. Now upon Syria's land of roses
Softly the light of eve reposes.

Light is the subject. *Reposes* is the predicate. *Now*, *softly*, and the phrase, *Upon Syria's land*, etc., modify *reposes*.

221—9. Where are you going this summer?

Are going is modified by *where*, and by the phrase, (during) *this summer*.

221—10. Be not like dumb, driven cattle.

Be like is the predicate. *Like*, an adjective, is modified by the phrase, (Unto) *dumb, driven cattle*.

221—11. The mournful tidings of the death of his son filled the proud heart of the old man with the keenest anguish.

With keenest anguish modifies *filled*.

221—12. Forbid it, Almighty God!

Forbid, the predicate, agrees with the subject understood. *Almighty God* is independent by exclamation.

www.libtool.com.cn

221—13. How wonderful is sleep!

Sleep is the subject. *Is wonderful* is the predicate. *How* modifies *wonderful*.

221—14. Harvey, the discoverer of the circulation of the blood, was an eminent English physician.

Harvey is the subject. *Was physician* is the predicate. *The discoverer*, etc. is in apposition with *Harvey*, and modifies that word.

221—15. When shall we be stronger?

We is the subject. *Shall be stronger* is the predicate. *When* modifies *shall be*.

221—16. Vex thou not the poet's mind.

Thou is the subject. *Vex* is the predicate. *Mind* is the direct object.

221—17. Did they make him master?

They is the subject. *Make master* is the predicate, *master* being a factitive noun.

222—18. What a world of happiness their harmony foretells!

Harmony is the subject. *Foretells* is the predicate. *World* is the direct object. It is modified by *what*, *a*, and the phrase *of happiness*.

222—19. Between it and the garden lies

A league of grass, washed by a slow broad stream.

League is the subject. *Lies* is the predicate. The phrase *between it*, etc., modifies *lies*. *Washed*, etc. modifies *grass*.

222—20. Oh, ever thus, from childhood's hour
I've seen my fondest hopes decay.

I is the subject. *Have seen* is the predicate. *Decay* modifies *hopes*. *Thus* and *ever* modify *have seen*.

222—1. The master gave his scholars a lesson to learn.
To learn modifies *lesson*.

222—2. The ploughman homeward plods his weary way.
Homeward, an adverb, modifies *plods*. *Weary* modifies *way*.

222—3. Will it be the next week or the next year?
(During) *the next week* and (during) *the next year* modify *will be*.

224—4. I will give thee a silver pound to row us o'er the ferry.
(To) *thee* modifies *will give*. *To row* also modifies *will give*.

222—5. Having ridden up to the spot, the enraged officer struck the unfortunate man dead with a single blow of his sword.

Struck dead is the predicate, *dead* being a factitive adjective. *Having ridden*, etc. modifies *officer*. *Man* is the direct object of *struck dead*.

222—6. To reach Cathay, famed in the writings of Marco Polo, fired the imagination of the daring navigator.

To reach is the subject. *Famed* modifies *Cathay*.

222—7. I saw a man with a sword.

With a sword modifies *man*.

222—8. He found all his wants supplied by the care of his friends.

Found supplied is the predicate. *Wants* is the direct object of *found*. *Supplied* is an adjective, referring to *wants*.

222—9. All but one were killed.

But one = *except one*, modifies *all*.

222—11. Flattered to tears this aged man and poor.

Flattered modifies *man*.

222—12. The scholar did nothing but read.

But read = *but to read*, modifies *nothing*.

222—13. He does not laugh.

Does laugh is the predicate. *Not* modifies *does*.

222—14. My mother gave me a letter to read.

(*To*) *me* modifies *gave*. *To read* modifies *letter*.

222—15. What did you come here for?"

Did come is the predicate. *For what* modifies *did come*.

229—1. The rose that all are praising is not the rose for me.

The clause, *that all are praising*, modifies *rose*, the subject.

229—2. When we go forth in the morning we lay a moulding hand upon our destiny.

The subordinate clause, *When we go, etc.*, modifies *lay*, the predicate of the principal clause. *Forth* modifies *go*.

229—3. Whilst light and colors rise and fly,
Lives Newton's deathless memory.

Memory is the subject of the main clause. *Lives* is the predicate. The subordinate clause, *Whilst light, etc.*, modifies *lives*.

229—4. The boy stood on the burning deck,
Whence all but him had fled.

Whence all but him, etc. modifies *deck*. The phrase, *but him* = *except him*, modifies *all*.

229—5. When he was a boy, Franklin, who afterward became a distinguished statesman and philosopher, learned his trade in the printing-office of his brother, who published a paper in Boston.

Franklin is the subject of the main clause. *Learned* is the predicate. *When he was a boy* modifies *learned*. *Who afterward became*, etc. modifies *Franklin*. *Who published*, etc. modifies *brother*.

229—6. He that fights and runs away
May live to fight another day.

That fights, etc. modifies the subject *he*. *To fight* modifies *may live*. *Day* is in the objective after a preposition understood.

229—7. Go into Turkey, where the pachas will tell you that the Turkish government is the most perfect in the world.

The subject of the main clause is understood. *Go* is the predicate. *Where the pachas*, etc. modifies *Turkey*. The direct object of *tell* is *that the Turkish government*, etc. *Most perfect* modifies *government* understood.

229—8. The Dutch florist who sells tulips for their weight in gold laughs at the antiquary who pays a great price for a rusty lamp.

Who sells, etc. modifies *florist*, the subject of the main clause. *Laughs* is the predicate. *Who pays*, etc. modifies *antiquary*.

229—9. When I look upon the tombs of the great, every emotion of envy dies in me.

Emotion is the subject of the main clause. *Dies* is the predicate. *When I look*, etc. modifies *dies*.

229—10. We must not think the life of a man begins when he can feed himself.

The direct object of *must think* is *the life of a man begins*, etc. *When he can feed himself* modifies *begins*.

229—11. Tell me not in mournful numbers
Life is but an empty dream!

The subject of the main clause is understood. *Tell* is the predicate. (To) *me* modifies *tell*. The direct object of *tell* is the second line, of which *life* is the subject and *is dream* is the predicate. *But*, an adverb, modifies *is*.

230—12. When in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume, among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

Of the main clause, *respect* is the subject and *requires* is the predicate. The direct object is the clause, *that they should*, etc. *When it becomes*, etc. modifies *requires*. The phrase, *in the course*, modifies *becomes*. *Which have connected* modifies *bands*. *To dissolve* and *to assume* modify *it*. The clause, *to which the laws of nature*, etc., modifies *station*.

230—1. I do not admire such books as he writes.

As he writes modifies *books* adjectively. This is probably equivalent to *as those are which he writes*.

230—2. It is only by the fresh feelings of the heart that mankind can be very powerfully affected.

It, the subject of the main clause, is modified by the explanatory clause introduced by *that*. *Only* modifies *by feelings*. *By feelings* modifies *is*. *That* is an introductory conjunction.

230—3. That man has been from time immemorial a right-handed animal is beyond dispute.

That is an introductory conjunction, introducing the noun clause which is the subject of the sentence, includ-

ing all preceding *is*. In the subordinate clause *has been animal* is the predicate. *From time* modifies *has been*. *Immemorial*, an adjective, modifies *time*.

280—4. He is proud that he is noble.

The clause, *that he is noble*, modifies *proud* adverbially.

280—5. The boy ran so fast that I could not overtake him.

Fast, an adverb, modifies *ran*. *So* modifies *fast*. The clause, *that I could*, etc., modifies *so*.

280—6. My Father is greater than I.

Than I (am great) modifies *greater*.

280—7. Oh! that I knew where I might find him!

This sentence is equivalent to *Oh!* (I wish) *that I knew*, etc. *Where I might find him* modifies *knew*.

280—8. The older you become, the wiser you should be.

The second clause is the principal, and the first, the subordinate. *Should be wiser* is the predicate of the main clause. *The* is an adverb, modifying *wiser*. *Become older* is the predicate of the subordinate clause. *The* modifies *older* adverbially.

280—9. His conduct is not such as I admire.

Of the main clause *is such* is the predicate. The subordinate clause, *as I admire*, modifies *such*.

280—10. See here is a bower

Of eglantine with honeysuckles woven,

Where not a spark of prying light creeps in.

See is the predicate of the main clause. *Of eglantine* modifies *bower*. *Woven* modifies *eglantine*. *Where not a spark*, etc. modifies *bower*.

280—11. The lamb thy riot doomed to bleed to-day,

Had he¹ thy reason, would he² skip and play?

He² is the subject of the main clause. *Would skip* and *play* is the predicate. *Lamb* is in the nominative

independent by pleonasm. The clause, *thy riot doomed* (which) *to bleed to-day*, modifies *lamb*. *Had he thy reason* = *if he had thy reason*, modifies *would skip and play*.

230—12. 'Tis better to have loved and lost
Than never to have loved at all.

It is the subject of the main clause. The phrase, *to have loved and* (to have) *lost*, modifies the subject *it*. The last line is equivalent to *Than* (it is good) *never to have loved at all*. *Never* modifies *to have loved*.

233—3. If Hannibal had not wintered at Capua, by which circumstance his troops were enervated, but, on the contrary, after the battle of Cannæ, had proceeded to Rome, it is not improbable that the great city would have fallen.

Of the main clause, *it* is the subject, modified by the explanatory clause, *that the great city*, etc. *Is improbable* is the predicate. The clause, *If Hannibal had*, etc., modifies *would have fallen*. The clause, *By which circumstance*, etc., modifies *had wintered*. *But* connects *had wintered* and *had proceeded*. *After the battle*, etc. modifies *had proceeded*. *On the contrary* modifies *had proceeded*.

238—4. Time but the impression deeper makes,
As streams their channels deeper wear.

Time is the subject, and *makes deeper*, the predicate, of the main clause. *But* = *only*, modifies *makes deeper*. The subordinate clause modifies *makes deeper*. *Streams* is the subject, and *wear deeper*, the predicate, of the subordinate clause. *Channels* is the direct object of *wear*.

238—5. Gayly chattering to the clattering
Of the brown nuts downward pattering,
Leap the squirrels red and gray.

Squirrels is the subject, and *leap* the predicate. *Chattering* modifies *squirrels*. *Clattering* is in the objective

after *to*. *Pattering* modifies *nuts*. *Downward* modifies *pattering*.

233—6. The long-remembered beggar was his guest.

Long-remembered modifies *beggar*.

183—7. All¹ that¹ I¹ have, and all² that² I² am, and all³ that³ I³ hope, in this life, I⁴ am now ready here to stake upon it; and I⁵ leave off as I⁶ began, that, live or die, survive or perish, I⁷ am for the Declaration.

In the first member *I⁴* is the subject, and *am ready* the predicate, of the main clause. *To stake* modifies *ready*. *Here* modifies *stake*. The three clauses introduced by *all¹*, *all²*, *all³* are the direct objects of *stake*. *All* in each of the clauses is modified by the relative clause following. *That¹* is in the objective after *have*; *that²* is a predicate nominative after *am*; *that³* is the direct object of *hope*. *In this world* modifies *have*, *am*, and *hope*. In the second member, *I⁵* is the subject, and *leave off* is the predicate. *As I began* modifies *leave off*. *That I am for*, etc. also modifies *leave off*. The verb *am* is modified by the clauses, (If I) *live or* (if I) *die*, (if I) *survive or* (if I) *perish*.

233—8. The evil that men do lives after them;

The good is oft interred with their bones.

Evil is the subject of the first member, modified by the clause, *that men do*. *That* is the direct object of *do*. *Lives* is the predicate. In the second member *good*, used as a noun, is the subject.

233—9. Toiling, rejoicing, sorrowing, onward through life he goes.

Toiling, *rejoicing*, *sorrowing* are participles, modifying *he*, the subject. *Onward* modifies *goes*, the predicate.

233—10. In such a cause I grant

An English poet's privilege to rant.

I is the subject, and *grant*, the predicate. *Privilege* is the direct object. *To rant* modifies *privilege*. *In such a cause* modifies *to rant*.

233—11. Hence, loathèd melancholy,

Of Cerberus and blackest midnight born,

In Stygian cave forlorn,

'Mongst horrid shapes and shrieks and sights unholy.

It is evident that this sentence should have a comma placed after *hence*, which is an adverb, modifying *go* or *get* understood. *Melancholy* is in the nominative independent. *Loathèd* is an adjective, modifying *melancholy*. *Born* is a participle, modifying *melancholy*. *Forlorn* is an adjective, modifying *cave*.

233—12. We do not, indeed, expect all men to be philosophers or statesmen, but we confidently trust—and our expectation of the duration of our system of government rests on that trust—that by the diffusion of general knowledge and good and virtuous sentiments the political fabric may be secure, as well against open violence and overthrow as against that slow but sure undermining of licentiousness.

Indeed is independent. *Men* is the direct object of *expect*, the predicate, and is here used as the assumed subject of *to be philosophers*, etc. *That by the diffusion*, etc. modifies *trust*. The phrase, *by the diffusion*, etc., modifies *secure*. *As well as* is a complex conjunction, joining the two phrases, *against violence and overthrow* and *against undermining*, both of which modify *secure*. *But*, a conjunction, connects the two adjectives *slow* and *sure*.

233—18. If we confine our view to the globe we inhabit, it must be allowed that chemistry and geology are the two sciences which not only offer the fairest promise, but already contain the largest generalizations.

It is the subject of the main clause; it is modified by

the explanatory clause, *that chemistry*, etc. *Must be allowed* is the predicate of the main clause; it is modified by the subordinate clause, *If we confine our view*, etc. *Which not only offer*, etc. modifies *sciences*. *Not only* and *but* are correlatives.

233—14. Better to reign in hell than serve in heaven.

It understood is the subject of the main clause; (*were*) *better* is the predicate. The second clause is equivalent to *than* (it were good) *to serve in heaven*. *To reign* modifies *it*; *to serve* modifies *it* understood in the subordinate clause.

234—15. Where are the flowers,¹ the fair young flowers,² that
lately sprung and stood
In brighter light and softer airs, a beauteous sister-
hood?

*Flowers*¹ is the subject of the main clause. *Flowers*² is in apposition with *flowers*¹. The subordinate clause introduced by *that* modifies *flowers*¹. *Stood sisterhood* = *were sisterhood*, is the predicate of the subordinate clause.

234—16. Here rests his head upon the lap of earth
A youth to fortune and to fame unknown.

Head is the subject. *Youth* is in apposition with *his*. *Unknown* modifies *youth*. *To fortune* and *to fame* modify *unknown*. The second line modifies *his* as an adjective element; *youth*, the basis, being in apposition with *his*.

234—17. Further observation and experience have given me
a different idea of this feathered voluptuary. which I will ven-
ture to impart, for the benefit of my young readers who may re-
gard him with the same unqualified envy and admiration which
I once indulged.

Observation and *experience* are the subjects of the main clause. *Idea* is the direct object of the predicate *have given*. The clause, *which I venture*, etc., modifies *idea*.

Who may regard, etc. modifies *readers*. *Which I once indulged* modifies *envy* and *admiration*.

234—18. All nature is but art unknown to thee;
All chance, direction which thou canst not see;
All discord, harmony not understood;
All partial evil, universal good.

NOTE.—See page 142—2 for this sentence.

234—19. That moss-covered vessel I hail as a treasure;
For often, at noon, when returned from the field,
I found it the source of an exquisite pleasure,
The purest and sweetest that nature can yield.

Vessel is the direct object of *hail*. *As* is an introductory conjunction. *Treasure* is in apposition with *vessel*. *Returned* is a participle, modifying *I*. *Source* is in the same case as *it* by predication, the expression meaning *I found it (to be) the source*, etc.

234—21. On the cross-beam under the Old South bell
The nest of a pigeon is builded well.
In summer and winter that bird is there,
Out and in with the morning air.
I love to see him track the street
With his wary eye and active feet;
And I often watch him as he springs,
Circling the steeple with easy wings,
Till across the dial his shade has passed,
And the belfry edge is gained at last.

Under the Old South bell modifies *beam*. *In summer* and (*in*) *winter* modify *is*. *Out and in* is a complex adverb, modifying *going* understood. *To see* modifies *love*. (*To*) *track* modifies *him*. *As he springs* modifies *watch*. *Circling* modifies *he*. *Till his shade has passed* modifies *circling*.

234—22. There is a land,¹ of every land² the pride,
Beloved of heaven o'er all the world beside.

There is an independent adverb. *Land*¹ is the subject

of the sentence. *Pride* is in apposition with *lund*¹. *Beloved* modifies *lund*¹. *O'er world* modifies *beloved*. *All*, *the*, and *beside* modify *world*.

234—23. Now leave complaining and begin your tea.

Leave is the predicate of the first member, and *begin*, of the second. The subject in each is understood.

234—24. This is the forest primeval. The murmuring pines and the hemlock

Bearded with moss, and in garments green, indistinct in the twilight,

Stand¹ like Druids of old with voices sad and prophetic,

Stand² like harpers hoar, with beards that rest on their bosoms.

Primeval is an adjective, modifying *forest*. *Pines* and *hemlock* is the compound subject of the second sentence. *Stand*¹ and *stand*² is the predicate. *Bearded* modifies the subject. *In green garments* also modifies the subject. *Indistinct*, an adjective, modifies *pin*es and *hemlock*. *Like* is a conjunctive adverb. *Druids* is the subject of *stood* understood. *Stand*² is modified by the subordinate clause, *Like harpers hoar* (stand). *With beards*, etc. modifies *harpers*.

234—25. On a sudden, open fly
With impetuous recoil and jarring sounds
The infernal doors; and on their hinges grate
Harsh thunder.

Doors is the subject of the first member. *Fly* is the predicate. In the second member *doors* understood is the subject, and *grate*, the predicate. *Thunder* is the direct object of *grate*.

- 234—26. In her ear he whispers gayly,
 “If my heart by signs can tell,
 Maiden, I have watched thee daily,
 And I think thou lov’st me well.”

Whispers is the predicate. The last three lines are the direct object of *whispers*. *Maiden* is independent. The second line modifies *lov’st*. *By signs* modifies *can tell*.

234—27. We next hear of him, with myriads of his kind, banqueting among the reeds of the Delaware, and grown corpulent with good feeding. He has changed his name in travelling. Boblincon no more—he is the reed-bird now, the much-sought-for titbit of Pennsylvania epicures, the rival in unlucky fame of the ortolan! Wherever he goes, pop! pop! pop! every rusty firelock in the country is blazing away. He sees his companions falling by thousands around him. Does he take warning and reform? Alas! not he. Incurable epicure! again he wings his flight. The rice-swamps of the South invite him. He gorges himself among them almost to bursting; he can scarcely fly for corpulency. He has once more changed his name, and is now the famous rice-bird of the Carolinas. Last stage of his career: behold him spitted, with dozens of his corpulent companions, and served up, a vaunted dish, on the table of some Southern gastronome.

Banqueting modifies *him*. *Grown corpulent* also modifies *him*. *With myriads*, etc. modifies *banqueting*. *Boblincon no more* = *he is Boblincon no more*. *Titbit* is in apposition with *reed-bird*, so also is *rival*. *Pop, pop, pop* are used as nouns in the objective after *hear* understood. *Falling* modifies *companions*. *Around him* modifies *fall*. *Incurable epicure* is independent. *To bursting* modifies *gorges*. *Almost* modifies *to bursting*. *More* modifies *has changed*. *This is* is understood before *last stage*. *Spitted* modifies *him*. *With dozens*, etc. modifies *him*. *Served up* modifies *him*. *Dish* is in apposition with *him*.

THE END.

www.libtool.com.cn

www.libtool.com.cn

www.libtool.com.cn

To avoid fine, this book should be returned on
or before the date last stamped below

50M-9-40

www.libtool.com.cn

JUL 28 1919

LELAND STANFORD
JUNIOR UNIVERSITY

BALCONY COLLECTION
CURRICULUM LIBRARY

www.libtool.com.cn

SANTA CLARA COUNTY
TEACHERS' LIBRARY
No.

IX
425.1
R239
bk.2

Raub, Albert N. 593629
Hints and helps in English grammar

DATE	NAME	DATE

LIBRARY, SCHOOL OF EDUCATION, STANFORD
593629

